A large, light gray illustration of two rifles crossed in an 'X' shape, serving as a background for the title text. The rifles are detailed with magazines, barrels, and stocks.

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
FOR ECHELON ABOVE CORPS,  
CORPS, AND DIVISION  
MILITARY POLICE PLATOONS  
(COMBAT SUPPORT)**

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
FOR ECHELON ABOVE CORPS,  
CORPS, AND DIVISION  
MILITARY POLICE PLATOONS  
(COMBAT SUPPORT)

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	Page
PREFACE .....	iii
CHAPTER 1. Unit Training. ....	1-1
1-1. Introduction .....	1-1
1-2. Supporting Material.....	1-1
1-3. Contents.....	1-2
1-4. Missions and Tasks .....	1-2
1-5. Training Principles .....	1-3
1-6. Training Strategy .....	1-3
1-7. Conducting Training.....	1-4
1-8. Force Protection (Safety).....	1-4
1-9. Environmental Protection.....	1-8
1-10. Evaluation .....	1-8
1-11. Feedback .....	1-10
CHAPTER 2. Training Matrix .....	2-1
2-1. Introduction .....	2-1
2-2. Mission-to-Collective Tasks Matrix .....	2-1
CHAPTER 3. Mission Outline .....	3-1
3-1. Introduction .....	3-1
3-2. Mission-Oriented Training .....	3-1
CHAPTER 4. Training Exercises .....	4-1
4-1. Introduction .....	4-1
4-2. Situational Training Exercises .....	4-1
STX 19-3-E0001: Route Regulation and Enforcement.....	4-2
STX 19-3-E0002: Security of Designated Assets .....	4-9

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 19-17-10-MTP, Division Military Police Platoon, dated 23 April 1987, and ARTEP 19-77-10-MTP, Corps Military Police Platoon, dated 30 September 1987.

STX 19-3-E0003: Internment/Resettlement Operations.....	4-16
STX 19-3-E0004: MP Support to Combat Operations.....	4-23
STX 19-3-E0005: MP Support to Battlefield Movement .....	4-30
CHAPTER 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines.....	5-1
5-1. Introduction .....	5-1
5-2. Structure .....	5-1
5-3. Format.....	5-1
5-4. Use.....	5-2
CHAPTER 6. External Evaluation.....	6-1
6-1. Introduction .....	6-1
6-2. Preparing the Evaluation .....	6-2
6-3. Selecting the Observer Controllers.....	6-6
6-4. Training the Observer Controllers .....	6-6
6-5. Recording External Evaluation Information .....	6-7
6-6. Selecting and Training the OPFOR .....	6-7
6-7. Conducting the Evaluation.....	6-11
6-8. Conducting the After-Action Review.....	6-12
APPENDIX A. Combined Arms Training Strategy .....	A-1
A-1. Introduction.....	A-1
A-2. Elements of the Unit Strategies.....	A-1
A-3. Guide to the Maneuver Strategy .....	A-1
A-4. Guide to the Gunnery Strategy .....	A-4
A-5. Guide to the Soldier Strategy .....	A-10
APPENDIX B. Verb List B-1	
B-1. Introduction.....	B-1
B-1. Definitions.....	B-1
GLOSSARY .....	Glossary-1
REFERENCES .....	References-1
MISSION TRAINING PLAN USER FEEDBACK.....	Questionnaire-1

## PREFACE

The purpose of this MTP is to provide a descriptive, performance-oriented training guide to assist leaders in training their units. This MTP aligns with and is part of the US Army training and tactical doctrine program. It contains tasks which support military police functions outlined in doctrinal manuals. Unit leaders use their METL to identify which collective tasks in this MTP that must be trained. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the T&EOs in this MTP. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the corps, division, and EAC Military Police Combat Support platoons organized under TOEs 19313L000, 19323L000, 19333L000, 19333F000, 19477L000, 19677L000, 07402L100, 87102L100, and 87102L200.

The proponent of this publication is HQ TRADOC. Submit changes for improving this publication on DA Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) and forward it to Commandant, US Army Military Police School, ATZN-MP-DA, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65437-5000.

Unless otherwise stated, whenever the masculine gender is used, both men and women are included.

## CHAPTER 1

### Unit Training

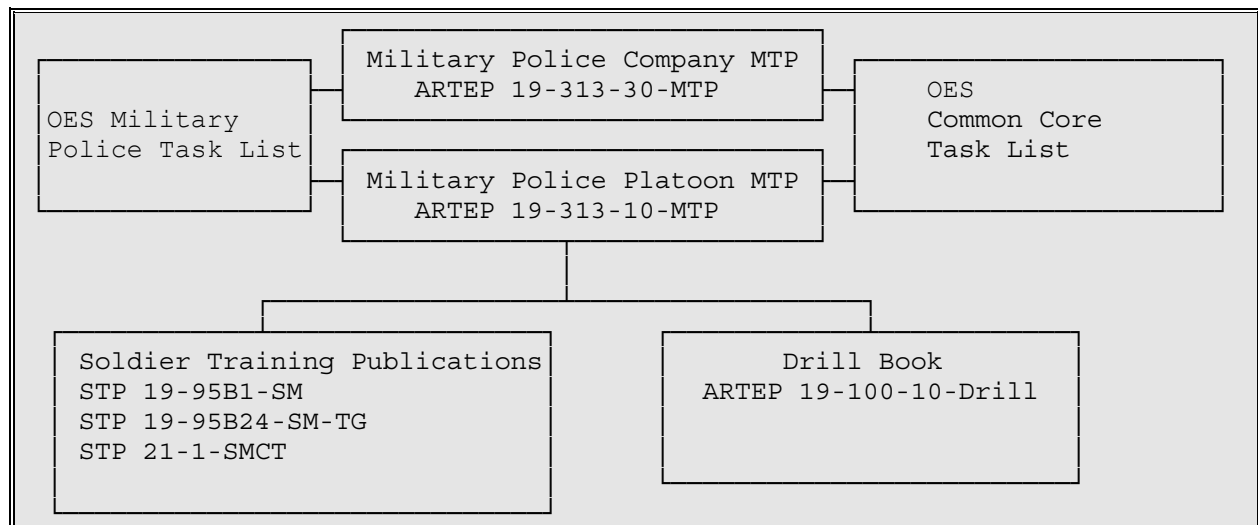
**1-1. Introduction.** This MTP is designed to provide you with a tactical training and evaluation program for your platoon. It provides guidance on how to train, as well as, the key missions on which to train. The specific details of your training program will depend on many factors, including the following:

- a. Unit's METL.
- b. Training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
- c. Training priorities of your unit.
- d. Training resources and areas available.

**1-2. Supporting Material.** This MTP describes a mission-oriented platoon training program. The unit training program includes the following publications:

- a. **ARTEP 19-313-10-MTP.** This manual describes the mission and tasks for the EAC, corps, and division military police platoons, combat support.
- b. **ARTEP 19-313-30-MTP.** This manual describes the mission and tasks for the EAC, corps, and division military police companies, combat support.
- c. **ARTEP 19-100-10 Drills.** These drills are used by the company commanders and platoon leaders to train skills that must be sustained by the unit.
- d. **STPs.** STPs for the appropriate MOS and skill levels.
- e. **Other.** OES task list for company commanders and platoon leaders.

This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1.



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship Diagram.**

**1-3. Contents.** This MTP is organized into six chapters and two appendixes:

**a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.** This chapter provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. It explains how to use this MTP to establish an effective training program.

**b. Chapter 2, Training Matrix.** This chapter shows the relationship between missions and collective tasks through the use of a chart.

**c. Chapter 3, Mission Outline.** This chapter presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between the mission and its subordinate tasks.

**d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.** This chapter consists of five STXs. These exercises provide training information and a sample scenario to give you a preconstructed, flexible vehicle for training a key mission. They may also serve as part of an internal or external evaluation designed to have the platoon execute the mission in a tactical setting. These exercises may be modified to suit the needs of the unit.

**e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.** This chapter provides the training criteria for tasks that the unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and OPFOR counter tasks. Each T&EO is part of a mission, and in various combinations, makes up the larger training exercises in Chapter 4.

**f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation.** This chapter provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

**g. Appendix A.** This appendix contains the Army's Combined Arms Training Strategy. It provides direction and guidance on how the Total Army will train and identifies the resources required to support that training. The CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner.

**h. Appendix B.** This appendix defines the intended meanings of verbs that describe the actions used to perform the collective tasks found in this manual. Trainers, performers, and evaluators must apply a consistent interpretation to task performance to ensure training is conducted to standard.

**1-4. Mission and Tasks.**

**a. Mission.** The platoon has one critical wartime mission: Provide military police combat support to an assigned area of operations. This MTP is composed of major activities that the platoon must execute to accomplish that mission.

**b. Training.** Each of the tasks may be trained individually or jointly. They must be oriented on the training criteria provided in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be linked through a logical, tactical scenario to form an STX. Although an STX is mission oriented, it will not, by itself, result in training to mission proficiency. Various combinations of STXs can be used in developing an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation designed by the company headquarters to evaluate the platoon's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

**c. Squad Training.** Squads are trained in the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

**d. Leader Tasks.** Leader tasks are individual tasks trained through the STP, OES task list, battle simulations, and execution of the unit's mission.

**e. Individual Tasks.** Individual tasks are mastered through training to the standards outlined in STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective task training.

**1-5. Training Principles.** This MTP is based on the training principles found in FMs 25-100 and 25-101.

**a. Train as Combined Arms and Services Teams.** Today's Army doctrine requires combined arms and services teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms and services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when teams train together. Leaders must regularly practice cross attachment of the full operational spectrum of combat, combat support, and combat service support units.

**b. Train as You Fight.** The goal of combat-level training is to achieve combat-level standards. Every effort must be made to attain this difficult goal. Within the confines of safety and common sense, leaders must be willing to accept less than perfect results initially and demand realism in training. They must integrate such realistic conditions as smoke, noise, simulated NBC, battlefield debris, loss of key leaders, and cold weather.

**c. Use Appropriate Doctrine.** Training must conform to Army doctrine. In units, new soldiers will have little time to learn nonstandard procedures. Therefore, units must train tasks to the Army standards contained in mission training plans, drill books, soldier's manuals, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications.

**d. Use Performance-Oriented Training.** Units become proficient in the performance of critical tasks and missions by practicing the tasks and mission. Soldiers learn best by doing, using a hands-on approach. Leaders are responsible for developing and executing a training strategy that will provide these opportunities. All training assets and resources, to include simulators, simulations and training devices must be included in the strategy.

**e. Train to Challenge.** Tough, realistic, intellectually, and physically challenging training both excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Challenging training inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.

**f. Train to Sustain Proficiency.** Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to repeat critical task training at the minimum frequency necessary for sustainment. MTPs and STPs are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

**g. Train Using Multiechelon Techniques.** To use available time and resources most effectively, commanders must simultaneously train individuals, leaders, and units at each echelon in the organization during training events.

**h. Train to Maintain.** Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Maintenance training designed to keep equipment in the fight is as important to soldiers as being expert in its use. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness in support of training or combat employment.

**i. Make Commanders the Primary Trainer.** The leaders in the chain of command are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organization.

**1-6. Training Strategy.** The training program developed and executed by a unit to train to standard its critical wartime mission is a component of the Army's CATS. The purpose of the CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the Total Army will train and to identify the resources necessary for that training. The CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage all unit and soldier training in an integrated manner. See Appendix A for the complete discussion of CATS.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training. Training to standard is the optimal way to train. However, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit's training strategy consists of three separate training strategies—maneuver, gunnery, and soldier. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard.

c. When developing the platoon's training plan, the platoon leader will identify the training tasks from the MTP required to train the METL. Then using the training strategies found in the MTP, the leader develops a battle-focused training plan by integrating and linking METL derived MTP training tasks with CATS training events.

**1-7. Conducting Training.** This MTP is designed to facilitate the planning, preparation, and conduct of unit training as explained in FMs 25-100 and 25-101.

**a. Guidance.** Commanders will assign the mission and/or supporting tasks for which they intend to develop training based on the METL and the higher echelon commander's training guidance. Trainers must plan and execute platoon training in support of this guidance.

**b. Task Selection.** Review the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs provided will support or can be modified to support your commander's guidance. If they do not support the guidance or need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix provides a listing of all critical collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

**c. Priority.** Prioritize the tasks that need training. You will never have time to train everything. You must focus on the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

**d. Integration.** Integrate training tasks into the training schedule using the following procedures:

- (1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency they need to be trained.
- (2) Determine the amount of time required and how you can use multiechelon training to the best effect.
- (3) Determine where the training can take place.
- (4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.
- (5) Organize your needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

**e. Coordinate.** Provide the task list to your commander. Once approved, the tasks selected are then scheduled on the unit training schedule.

**f. Determine Resources.** Determine the things you need to conduct the training such as ammunition, MILES equipment, or a suitable training area. Provide these requirements to your headquarters in sufficient time to ensure adequate acquisition and coordination.

**g. Monitor Progress.** Keep subordinate leaders informed and oversee the training they are conducting. Be sure that standards are rigidly enforced. If they are not, your unit and soldiers will suffer.

**1-8. Force Protection.**

**a. Safety.** Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and management to tie force protection to the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander's review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention. This enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness, which



determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are--

- (1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.
- (2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.
- (3) Training that provides the skills needed to perform to standard.
- (4) Task standards and procedures that are clear and practical.
- (5) Support that includes equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

**b. Risk Management.** Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but it also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

**c. Chain of Command.** Safety demands the involvement of the entire chain of command in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain of command and their responsibilities are as follows:

- (1) Commanders.
  - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
  - (b) Specify the amount of risk they will accept to accomplish the mission.
  - (c) Select risk reductions provided by staff.
  - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
  - (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.
- (2) Staff.
  - (a) Assists the commander in assessing risks.
  - (b) Develops risk reduction options for training.
  - (c) Integrates risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
  - (d) Eliminates unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
  - (e) Assesses safety performance during training.
  - (f) Evaluates safety performance during AARs.
- (3) Subordinate Leaders.
  - (a) Apply consistently effective risk management concepts and methods to operations they lead.
  - (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.
- (4) Individual Soldiers.
  - (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts and correct the situation when possible.
  - (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
  - (c) Take responsibility for personal safety.
  - (d) Work as a team member.
  - (e) Modify own risk behavior.

**d. Steps.** Risk management is a five step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5. The five steps are --

- (1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the missions.
- (2) Assess hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of its causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix (Figure 1-2) is a tool for assessing hazards.
- (3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make any residual risk decisions at the proper level of command.
- (4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into OPLANs, OPORDs, SOPs and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.
- (5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards to include follow up and after action review. Develop the lessons learned.

**e. Fratricide.** Fratricide is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy its equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment and management is the mechanism with which incidence of fratricide can be controlled.

**f. Causes of Fratricide.** The primary causes of fratricide are as follows:

- (1) Direct fire control plan failures. These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.
- (2) Land navigation failures. These result when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.
- (3) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems. It also includes units mistaking each other for the enemy in close proximity or under limited visibility conditions.
- (4) Inadequate control measures. Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events. Paragraph 1 of the OPORD is the commander's opportunity to "paint the picture" of the battlefield indicating location and activities of adjacent friendly units.
- (5) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.
- (6) Weapons error. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives and hand grenades, and similar incidents.
- (7) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance, unmarked or unrecorded minefields, FASCAM, and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, remove, record, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

			<b>HAZARD PROBABILITY</b>				
			FREQUENT	PROBABLE	OCCASIONAL	REMOTE	IMPROBABLE
			A	B	C	D	E
E F F E C T	CATASTROPHIC	I	<b>EXTREMELY HIGH</b>				
	CRITICAL	II					
	MARGINAL	III	<b>MEDIUM</b>				
	NEGLIGIBLE	IV				<b>LOW</b>	

**Effect**

Catastrophic Death or permanent total disability, system loss, and major property damage.  
 Critical Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of 3 months, major system damage, significant property damage.  
 Marginal Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system damage, minor property damage.  
 Negligible First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor systems impairment.

**Probability**

Frequent Individual soldier/item.....Occurs often in career/equipment service life.  
 All soldiers exposed or item inventory.....Continuously experienced.  
 Probable Individual soldier/item.....Occurs several times in career/equipment service life.  
 All soldiers exposed or item inventory.....Occurs frequently.  
 Occasional Individual soldier/item.....Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life.  
 All soldiers exposed or item inventory.....Occurs sporadically, or several times in inventory service life.  
 Remote Individual soldier/item.....Possible to occur in career/equipment service life.  
 All soldiers exposed or item inventory.....Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life.  
 Improbable Individual soldier/item.....Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life.  
 All soldiers exposed or item inventory.....Possible, but improbable; occurs only very rarely.

**Risk Levels**

Extremely High Loss of ability to accomplish mission.  
 High Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.  
 Medium Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission.  
 Low Little or no impact on mission accomplishment.

**Figure 1-2. Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix.**

**g. Results of Fratricide.** Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe the following consequences:

- (1) Loss of confidence in the unit leadership.
- (2) Increasing self-doubt among leaders.
- (3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.
- (4) Over supervision of units.
- (5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.
- (6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.
- (7) Loss of initiative.
- (8) Disrupted operations.
- (9) Degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

**1-9. Environmental Protection.** Protection of natural resources has continued to be an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease, and if possible, eliminate, damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management, and is based on the same philosophy as safety risk management. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

**a. Identify the Hazard.** Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

**b. Assess the Hazard.** Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix (Figure 1-3). Severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrix.

**c. Make Environmental Risk Decisions.** Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

**d. Brief the Chain of Command.** Brief the chain of command (to include installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

**e. Implement Controls.** Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

**f. Supervise.** Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

**1-10. Evaluation.** The T&EOs in Chapter 5 list the standards that you must meet for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels and must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are conducted by the headquarters two levels above. (See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.)

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Every training exercise provides the potential for feedback. Every evaluation is a training session. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is executed.

Environmental area			Rating:			
Unit Operations		Risk Impact				
Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of Personnel and light vehicles/system	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0

Environmental Risk Area Assessment Worksheet

	Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	Movement of personnel and light systems	Assembly area activities	Field maintenance of equipment	Garrison maintenance of equipment	Risk rating
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous materiel/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form

Category	Range	Environmental Damage	Decision Maker
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division Cdr
Extremely high	150-175	Severe	MACOM Cdr

Risk Categories

**Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix.**

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. In higher level exercises, it is usually feasible to do this with outside evaluators. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during exercises (usually after the completion of a major event). This is a proven technique that will allow you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

**1-11. Feedback.** Recommendations for improvements of this ARTEP MTP are requested. Feedback will help ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please send DA Form 2028 comments to the address reflected in paragraph 3 of the Preface.

## CHAPTER 2

### Training Matrix

**2-1. Introduction.** The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of the unit's personnel. Figure 2-1 lists the military police missions.

<p style="text-align: center;">AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS INTERNMENT/RESETTLEMENT OPERATIONS LAW &amp; ORDER OPERATIONS MANEUVER &amp; MOBILITY SUPPORT OPERATIONS POLICE INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS</p>
---

**Figure 2-1. Mission Identification.**

**2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix.** This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the missions and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate BOS. The BOS used in this matrix is defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks		AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS	INTERNMENT/RE SETTLEMENT	LAW & ORDER OPERATIONS	MANEUVER & MOBILITY SUPPORT
<b>Intelligence</b>					
19-3-11002	Conduct Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance	X			X
19-3-20002	Conduct an Area Reconnaissance	X			X
19-3-20003	Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance	X			X
19-3-52001	Conduct Intelligence Collecting and Reporting	X	X	X	X
<b>Maneuver</b>					
19-3-11001	Provide MP Support to a River Crossing				X
19-3-12004	Provide MP Support to a Passage of Lines Operation				X
19-3-22001	Conduct Response Force Operations	X			
19-3-22007	Conduct a Delay	X			
19-3-22008	Conduct Battle Handover to a Tactical Combat Force	X			
19-3-22009	Conduct a Movement to Contact	X			

Collective Tasks		AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS	INTERNMENT/RE SETTLEMENT	LAW & ORDER OPERATIONS	MANEUVER & MOBILITY SUPPORT
19-3-22010	Conduct a Deliberate Attack	X			
19-3-22011	Conduct a Hasty Attack	X			
19-3-22012	Conduct a Screen	X			
19-3-60003	Occupy A Site	X	X	X	X
7-3-C212	Defend Unit Position	X	X	X	X
7-3-C227	Perform a Tactical Road March				X
<b>Mobility and Survivability</b>					
03-3-C209	React to Smoke Operations	X	X	X	X
19-3-12002	Conduct Route Regulation Enforcement				X
19-3-12003	Perform Temporary Route Signing				X
19-3-13001	Conduct Dislocated Civilian Control Operations				X
19-3-13002	Conduct Straggler Control Operations				X
19-3-20004	Conduct Convoy Security	X			
19-3-20008	Conduct Security of Conventional Ammunition Supply Point	X			
19-3-20009	Provide Support for Deep-Water Port Security	X			
19-3-20010	Conduct Pipeline Security	X			
19-3-20011	Conduct Railway Security	X			
19-3-21001	Provide Security for Designated Persons	X			
19-3-22002	Provide MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense	X			
19-3-22004	Conduct Security of a Critical Site	X			
19-3-22005	Conduct Security of a Command Post	X			
19-3-22006	Conduct a Cordon and Search	X			
3-3-1041	Conduct Radiological Survey	X			
3-3-C202	Prepare For A Chemical Attack	X	X	X	X
3-3-C203	Respond To A Chemical Attack	X	X	X	X
3-3-C205	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X	X	X	X
3-3-C206	Prepare For Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
3-3-C208	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X



<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS</b>	<b>INTERNMENT/RE SETTLEMENT</b>	<b>LAW &amp; ORDER OPERATIONS</b>	<b>MANEUVER &amp; MOBILITY SUPPORT</b>
3-3-C222	Respond To The Residual Effects Of A Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
3-3-C223	Respond To The Initial Effects Of A Nuclear Attack	X	X	X	X
3-3-C224	Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X	X	X
3-3-C225	Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance	X			
3-3-C226	Cross A Chemically Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X
5-3-C210	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X	X	X
71-3-C232	Maintain Operations Security	X	X	X	X
<b>Air Defense</b>					
44-3-C220	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	X	X	X	X
<b>Combat Service Support</b>					
19-3-10001	Conduct Unit Deployment	X	X	X	X
19-3-20001	Support Area Damage Control Operations	X			X
19-3-31003	Conduct Collecting Point and Holding Area Operations		X		
19-3-31004	Perform Field Processing of Enemy Prisoners of War		X		
19-3-31005	Process Captured Documents and Equipment		X		
19-3-32003	Operate a Field Detention Facility for US Military Prisoners		X		
19-3-33001	Provide MP Support to Populace and Resource Control Operations		X		
19-3-34001	Provide MP Support to Noncombatant Evacuation Operations		X		
19-3-35001	Conduct Evacuation Operations		X		
19-3-40001	Perform Platoon-Level Law and Order Operations			X	
19-3-40003	Conduct Platoon-Level Civil Disturbance Control Operations	X	X	X	X
7-3-C228	Occupy Assembly Area	X			X
8-3-0003	Treat Casualties	X	X	X	X
8-3-C316	Transport Casualties	X	X	X	X

<b>Command and Control</b>					
11-3-C214	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>POLICE INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS</b>
<b>Intelligence</b>		
19-3-11002	Conduct Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance	X
19-3-20002	Conduct an Area Reconnaissance	X
19-3-20003	Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance	X
19-3-52001	Conduct Intelligence Collecting and Reporting	X
<b>Maneuver</b>		
19-3-11001	Provide MP Support to a River Crossing	
19-3-12004	Provide MP Support to a Passage of Lines Operation	
19-3-22001	Conduct Response Force Operations	
19-3-22007	Conduct a Delay	
19-3-22008	Conduct Battle Handover to a Tactical Combat Force	
19-3-22009	Conduct a Movement to Contact	
19-3-22010	Conduct a Deliberate Attack	
19-3-22011	Conduct a Hasty Attack	
19-3-22012	Conduct a Screen	
19-3-60003	Occupy A Site	X
7-3-C212	Defend Unit Position	
7-3-C227	Perform a Tactical Road March	
<b>Mobility and Survivability</b>		
03-3-C209	React to Smoke Operations	X
19-3-12002	Conduct Route Regulation Enforcement	
19-3-12003	Perform Temporary Route Signing	
19-3-13001	Conduct Dislocated Civilian Control Operations	
19-3-13002	Conduct Straggler Control Operations	

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>POLICE INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS</b>
19-3-20004	Conduct Convoy Security	
19-3-20008	Conduct Security of Conventional Ammunition Supply Point	
19-3-20009	Provide Support for Deep-Water Port Security	
19-3-20010	Conduct Pipeline Security	
19-3-20011	Conduct Railway Security	
19-3-21001	Provide Security for Designated Persons	
19-3-22002	Provide MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense	
19-3-22004	Conduct Security of a Critical Site	
19-3-22005	Conduct Security of a Command Post	
19-3-22006	Conduct a Cordon and Search	
3-3-1041	Conduct Radiological Survey	
3-3-C202	Prepare For A Chemical Attack	<b>X</b>
3-3-C203	Respond To A Chemical Attack	<b>X</b>
3-3-C205	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	<b>X</b>
3-3-C206	Prepare For Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>
3-3-C208	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	<b>X</b>
3-3-C222	Respond To The Residual Effects Of A Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>
3-3-C223	Respond To The Initial Effects Of A Nuclear Attack	<b>X</b>
3-3-C224	Conduct Operational Decontamination	<b>X</b>
3-3-C225	Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance	
3-3-C226	Cross A Chemically Contaminated Area	<b>X</b>
5-3-C210	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	<b>X</b>
71-3-C232	Maintain Operations Security	<b>X</b>
<b>Air Defense</b>		
44-3-C220	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	<b>X</b>

<b>Combat Service Support</b>		
19-3-10001	Conduct Unit Deployment	<b>X</b>
19-3-20001	Support Area Damage Control Operations	
19-3-31003	Conduct Collecting Point and Holding Area Operations	
19-3-31004	Perform Field Processing of Enemy Prisoners of War	<b>X</b>
19-3-31005	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	<b>X</b>
19-3-32003	Operate a Field Detention Facility for US Military Prisoners	
19-3-33001	Provide MP Support to Populace and Resource Control Operations	<b>X</b>
19-3-34001	Provide MP Support to Noncombatant Evacuation Operations	
19-3-35001	Conduct Evacuation Operations	<b>X</b>
19-3-40001	Perform Platoon-Level Law and Order Operations	
19-3-40003	Conduct Platoon-Level Civil Disturbance Control Operations	<b>X</b>
7-3-C228	Occupy Assembly Area	
8-3-0003	Treat Casualties	<b>X</b>
8-3-C316	Transport Casualties	<b>X</b>
<b>Command and Control</b>		
11-3-C214	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	<b>X</b>

**Figure 2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix.**

## CHAPTER 3

### Mission Outline

**3-1. Introduction.** The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the mission and its supporting tasks. The outline provides the trainer a diagram of the unit mission, sample STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them.

**3-2. Mission-Oriented Training.** Because unit training is mission oriented, the mission outline shows how training a task contributes to the ability of the unit to perform its mission. The mission outline, Figure 3-1, provides the leader with a visual outline of the unit's missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

#### MILITARY POLICE PLATOON MISSION OUTLINE Provide MP Combat Support

<u>STX</u> 19-3-E0001 Route Regulation and Enforcement	<u>STX</u> 19-3-E0002 Security of Designated Assets	<u>STX</u> 19-3-E0003 Internment/ Resettlement Operations	<u>STX</u> 19-3-E0004 MP Support to Combat Operations	<u>STX</u> 19-3-E0005 MP Support to Battlefield Movement
19-3-11002 Conduct Rte Recon and Surveillance	19-3-22004 Conduct Security of a Critical Site	19-3-32003 Operate a Field Detention Facility	19-3-22007 Perform Delay	19-3-11001 Conduct MP Support to a River Crossing
19-3-12002 Conduct Rte Regulation Enforcement	19-3-21001 Provide Security for Designated Persons	19-3-31003 Conduct Coll Pt and Holding Area Operations	19-3-22012 Conduct a Screen	19-3-12004 Conduct MP Support to Passage of Lines
19-3-13002 Conduct Straggler Control Operations	19-3-20004 Conduct Convoy Security	19-3-11002 Conduct Route Recon and Surveillance	19-3-22001 Conduct Response Force Operations	19-3-22008 Conduct Battle Handover to a TCF
19-3-13001 Conduct Dislocated Civilian Control Operations	19-3-22005 Conduct Security of a Command Post	19-3-35001 Evacuate Prisoners	19-3-22009 Conduct Movement to Contact	
19-3-52001 Conduct Intell Collecting and Reporting	19-3-22002 Provide MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense	19-3-31005 Process Captured Documents and Equipment	19-3-22011 Conduct a Hasty Attack	
		19-3-52001 Conduct Intell Collecting and Reporting		

**Figure 3-1. Platoon Mission Outline.**

## CHAPTER 4

### Training Exercises

**4-1. Introduction.** Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains five sample STXs. These exercises are designed to assist you in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit's mission proficiency. Figure 4-1 lists the exercises and their page numbers.

TITLE	EXERCISE NUMBER	PAGE
Route Regulation and Enforcement	19-3-E0001	4-2
Security of Designated Assets	19-3-E0002	4-9
Internment/Resettlement Operations	19-3-E0003	4-16
MP Support to Combat Operations	19-3-E0004	4-23
MP Support to Battlefield Movement	19-3-E0005	4-30

**Figure 4-1. Training Exercises.**

**4-2. Situational Training Exercises.** STXs are short, scenario driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. These exercises provide the information for the missions that make up the critical missions. STXs fulfill the following important functions:

- a. Provides repetitive training on the missions.
- b. Allows training to "focus" on identified weaknesses.
- c. Allows the unit to practice the STX before conducting a higher echelon FTX.
- d. Saves you time by providing a majority of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

## MILITARY POLICE PLATOON

### STX

#### 19-3-E0001

### ROUTE REGULATION AND ENFORCEMENT

**1. Objective.** This STX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks for the platoon's maneuver and mobility support operation.

**2. Interface.** This STX is designed to support the company FTX 19-2-E0001, Route Regulation and Enforcement. It is supported by the following military police drills (from ARTEP 19-100-10-DRILL):

- Drill 1, Use Traveling Overwatch Technique
- Drill 2, Use Bounding Overwatch Technique
- Drill 3, React to Indirect Fire
- Drill 4, React to an Ambush
- Drill 6, Dismount and Place the MK19 Machine Gun into Action
- Drill 7, Dismount and Place the M2 Machine Gun into Action
- Drill 8, Assemble and Erect OE-254/GRC Antenna System

### **3. Training.**

**a. Guidance.** The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. The trainer should also determine which tasks might require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be conducted on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The supporting individual tasks are found at the end of each T&EO in this manual. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 95B and the soldier's common task manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as the common task test and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be conducted on the collective tasks that support a company's METL. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided as required. Collective tasks that support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the mission outline in Chapter 3 and Figure 4-5.

(3) Leader Training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as other individual tasks or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation encouraged. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground while practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pam 350-100.)

**b. Training Tips.** Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX are as follows:

(1) Know the requirements for circulation control. (See FMs 19-1 and 19-4.)

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or with live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise may be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks," constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. These conditions include full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.



(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency. However, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator of higher rank and experience should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is grouped for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

(g) OPFOR should be trained prior to the exercise to ensure synchronization of events.

**c. Training Enhancers.** This STX requires the platoon to perform maneuver and mobility support operations.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in the STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without night-vision devices.

(2) This STX may be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

(3) This STX should also be conducted in a MOUT environment.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO by the platoon. An AAR should be held after completing the route reconnaissance and route regulation enforcement operations and after straggler and dislocated civilian control operations. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your platoon's performance. Figure 4-2 provides a recommended sequence of events and an estimated time for each portion of the STX.

**5. Special Situation.** The platoon receives the following FRAGO (Figure 4-3) to conduct maneuver and mobility support operations. There are substantial numbers of stragglers and dislocated civilians passing through the area of operations, which is causing congestion on the MSR. Your platoon is directed to control the stragglers and dislocated civilians in the area.

SEQUENCE	EVENT	ESTIMATED TIME
1	Receive mission, begin troop-leading procedures.	2.0 hr.
2	Conduct route reconnaissance	3.0 hrs.
3	Conduct route signing and route regulation enforcement.	3.0 hrs.
4	Intermediate AAR	0.5 hrs.
5	Plan for control operations	0.5 hrs.
6	Conduct straggler and dislocated civilian control operations	2.0 hrs.
7	Final AAR	1.0 hr.
8	Collect and report intelligence	*
TOTAL TIME		12.0 hrs.
<p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ Events will be trained to standard, not to time. The time required to train an event varies based on METT-TC and the proficiency of the unit.</li> <li>◦ Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**Figure 4-2. Scenario for STX 19-3-E0001.**

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. The enemy threat consists of platoon-size partisan guerrilla forces or reinforced squad-size special operations teams. They are expected to disrupt MSR movement within the next 48 hours. Enemy artillery is capable of delivering NBC munitions into the corps rear area.

b. Friendly Forces. Following a successful attack, the division is currently in a defensive posture while preparing for future offensive operations.

2. MISSION. (who, what, when, where, why) Platoon supports MSR operations NLT \_\_\_ within its AOR to allow rapid movement of military traffic in support of company or brigade operations.

3. EXECUTION:

a. Concept of the Operation. (See Overlay.)

(1) Intent. The purpose of the operation is to ensure freedom of movement for all authorized traffic on all MSRs within the AO. We will do so by enforcing MSR regulations and placement of route signs. Endstate will be defined as unimpeded movement of military traffic on MSRs to include clearance of MSRs of stragglers and dislocated civilians.

(2) Fire Support. Priority of fire goes to base/base cluster defense, then MSR security.

b. Tasks to subordinate elements.

(1) Conduct route reconnaissance and surveillance along MSRs.

(2) Upon approval of traffic control plan, conduct circulation control in AO.

c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Priority of movement on the MSRs--combat units, followed by support to combat units in contact (Class III, Class V, and Class VIII).

(2) MOPP Level 1 in effect.

(3) Forward all route reconnaissance overlays to this HQ NLT (date/time).

Figure 4-3. Example FRAGO for STX 19-3-E0001.

- (4) Submit SITREPs to this HQ daily at 0600 hrs and 1800 hrs.
- (5) PIR:
- LZ/DZ locations.
  - Any information on possible enemy locations, size, and activity.
  - Any reportable restrictions to the route.
  - Any changes along MSR, which may disrupt movement of traffic.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
- a. Command.
- (1) The company CP will be located at (grid).
  - (2) The battalion CP will be located at (grid).
  - (3) Chain of command per SOP.
- b. Signal.
- (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
  - (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect: KTC 1400D.

**Figure 4-3. Continued.**

**6. Support Requirements:**

**a. Minimum Trainers and OCs:** The platoon leader who is the trainer and primary evaluator will conduct this exercise. If possible, there should be at least two OCs for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

**b. Vehicles and Communications:** All vehicles and radios organic to the platoon will be used. OPFOR requires various vehicles to portray friendly military and dislocated civilian traffic on the routes.

**c. OPFOR/Stragglers/Dislocated Civilians:** These support personnel should be used in this exercise after the platoon demonstrates basic proficiency. The use of OPFOR acting as stragglers and dislocated civilians will add realism, gauging the platoon's effectiveness in exercising the proper control measures and indicating their ability to operate in a potentially stressful environment. One squad of OPFOR personnel acting as stragglers and dislocated civilians is sufficient for a platoon exercise.

**d. Training Area:** An area of at least 4 by 15 kilometers is needed for route reconnaissance, route regulation and enforcement, and circulation control operations. The terrain should offer multiple sites and approaches to key areas. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select sites and routes best suited for the operation.

**e. Additional Equipment:** The items listed in Figure 4-4 are suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items. Experience dictates that the training will also require additional 5-gallon

water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries, basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire.

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY		
5.56 mm, blank	40 rds per M16 rifle		
5.56 mm, blank	40 rds per M4 carbine		
5.56 mm, blank linked	400 rds per M249 SAW		
Simulator, projectile, ground burst	10 each exercise		
Simulator, hand grenade	10 each exercise		
OTHER ITEMS	QUANTITY		
Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)	12 each		
Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)	140 each		
MILES EQUIPMENT	Platoon	Evaluators	OPFOR
M16/M4 system	32		1 Sqd
Controller Guns		2	
Small arms alignment fixture		1	

**Figure 4-4. Suggested Support Requirements for STX 19-3-E0001.**

**f. Other Requirements.** Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

**7. T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-5 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

TASK	NUMBERS	PAGE
Conduct Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance	19-3-11002	5-4
Conduct Route Regulation and Enforcement	19-3-12002	5-66
Conduct Straggler Control Operations	19-3-13002	5-76
Conduct Dislocated Civilian Control Operations	19-3-13001	5-73
Conduct Intelligence Collecting and Reporting	19-3-52001	5-16

**Figure 4-5. T&EOs for STX 19-3-E0001.**

**CORPS MILITARY POLICE PLATOON****STX****19-3-E0002****SECURITY OF DESIGNATED ASSETS**

**1. Objective.** This STX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks for the platoon's operation of providing security to designated assets.

**2. Interface.** This STX supports the company FTX 19-2-E0003, Security of Designated Assets. It is supported by the following military police drills, (from ARTEP 19-100-10-DRILL):

Drill 3, React to Indirect Fire

Drill 4, React to an Ambush

Drill 6, Dismount and Place the MK19 Machine Gun into Action

Drill 7, Dismount and Place the M2 Machine Gun into Action

Drill 8, Assemble and Erect OE-254/GRC Antenna System

**3. Training.**

**a. Guidance.** The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. The trainer should also determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The supporting individual tasks are found at the end of each T&EO in this manual. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 95B and the soldier's common tasks manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task tests and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks that support the company's METL. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the mission outline in Chapter 3 and Figure 4-9.

(3) Leader Training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as other individual tasks or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground while practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pam 350-100.)

**b. Training Tips.** Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX are as follows:

(1) Know the requirements for area security. (See FMs 19-1 and 19-4.)

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or with live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise may be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks," constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. These conditions include full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency. However, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through

integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator of higher rank and experience should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

(g) OPFOR should be trained prior to the exercise to ensure synchronization of events.

**c. Training Enhancers.** This STX requires the platoon to perform security operations.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in the STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without night-vision devices.

(2) This STX may be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

(3) This STX should also be conducted in a MOUT environment.

(4) The security mission of this STX may be expanded or altered as proficiency increases. The following T&EOs may be added as time becomes available or the training emphasis changes:

19-3-20008, Conduct Security of a Conventional Ammunition Supply Point.

19-3-20010, Conduct Pipeline Security.

19-3-20011, Conduct Railway Security.

19-3-20009, Provide Security for a Deep Water Port.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO by the platoon. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your platoon's performance. Figure 4-6 provides a recommended sequence of events and time for each portion of the STX.

#### **5. Special Situation.**

a. The commander has designated a facility within the area of operations as critical. The platoon receives the following FRAGO, directing it to provide security for the facility (Figure 4-7).

b. A senior official will be entering the AO for a tour, to include a visit to the facility being secured by the platoon. The platoon is directed to provide security for the person while he or she is in the area of operations.

c. A convoy of critical supplies will be leaving the facility. The platoon is directed to provide security for the convoy from the facility to the point where the convoy will be assumed by another MP escort element.



SEQUENCE	EVENT	ESTIMATED TIME
1	Receive mission, begin troop-leading procedures.	1.0 hr.
2	Establish and maintain security for a critical site.	2.0 hrs.
3	Intermediate AAR	.5 hrs.
4	Plan for VIP security mission	1.0
5	Conduct security of a designated person	2.0 hrs.
6	Plan for convoy security mission	1.0
7	Conduct convoy security	2.0 hrs.
8	Final AAR	1.0 hr.
9	Defend unit position	*
10	Secure CP or TOC	*
<b>TOTAL TIME</b>		10.5 hrs.
<p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</li> <li>◦ Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.</li> <li>◦ Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</li> </ul>		

**Figure 4-6. Scenario for STX 19-3-E0002.**

## FRAGMENTARY ORDER

### 1. SITUATION.

- a. **Enemy Forces.** The enemy threat consists of platoon-size guerrilla forces or reinforced squad-size special operations teams. They are expected to sabotage and disrupt critical logistical and C<sup>2</sup> facilities within the next 48 hours. The enemy is capable of inserting battalion-sized airborne or air assault teams into the AO. Enemy artillery is capable of delivering NBC munitions within the rear area.
- b. **Friendly Forces.** The corps is currently preparing to launch a major defensive operation. Combat units and critical supplies will be moving through the AO toward assembly areas.

2. **MISSION.** (who, what, when, where, why) Platoon provides security for the critical facility, for designated convoys, and for designated persons. The platoon allows the undisrupted/buildup of troops and supplies in support of corps operations.

### 3. EXECUTION:

#### a. Concept of the Operation. (See Overlay.)

(1) **Intent.** The purpose of the mission is to prevent critical operations and facilities from being delayed, disrupted, or destroyed by enemy activity. The methods will be through detailed planning and implementation of security measures to ensure operations are not hindered.

(2) **Fire Support.** Priority of fire goes to base/base cluster defense, then area security.

#### b. Tasks to subordinate elements.

(1) Establish and maintain security of the designated facility.

(2) Provide security escort for convoys and persons within the AO.

#### c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) MOPP Level 1 in effect.

(2) PIR:

- Enemy sightings and locations.
- Type and number of enemy weapons.
- Identification of enemy units.

**Figure 4-7. Example FRAGO for STX 19-3-E0002.**

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
    - (1) The company CP will be located at (grid).
    - (2) The battalion CP will be located at (grid).
    - (3) Chain of command per SOP.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
    - (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect: KTC 1400D.

**Figure 4-7. Continued.**

**6. Support Requirements:**

**a. Minimum Trainers and OCs:** This exercise will be conducted by the platoon leader who is the trainer and primary evaluator. If possible, have at least two OCs with higher rank and experience for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

**b. Vehicles and Communications:** All vehicles and radios organic to the platoon will be used.

**c. OPFOR:** The OPFOR ground force should consist of at least one reinforced squad.

**d. Training Area:** An area of at least 4 by 15 kilometers is needed. The terrain should offer multiple sites and approaches to key areas. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select sites and routes best suited for the operation. A structure or collection of structures to be used as the critical facility is preferred for training realism but may be simulated if necessary.

**e. Additional Equipment:** The items listed in Figure 4-8 are suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items. Experience dictates that the training will also require additional 5-gallon water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries, basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire.

**f. Other Requirements.** Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY		
5.56 mm, blank	40 rds per M16 rifle		
5.56 mm, blank	40 rds per M4 carbine		
5.56 mm, blank linked	400 rds per M249 SAW		
Simulator, projectile, ground burst	10 each exercise		
Simulator, hand grenade	10 each exercise		
OTHER ITEMS	QUANTITY		
Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)	12 each		
Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)	140 each		
MILES EQUIPMENT	Platoon	Evaluators	OPFOR
M16/M4 system	32		1 Sqd
Controller Guns		2	
Small arms alignment fixture		1	

**Figure 4-8. Suggested Support Requirements for STX 19-3-E0002.**

7. **T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-9 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

TASK	NUMBERS	PAGE
Conduct Security of a Critical Site	19-3-22004	5-102
Provide Security for Designated Persons	19-3-21001	5-95
Conduct Convoy Security	19-3-20004	5-80
Perform Security of a Command Post	19-3-22005	5-105
Provide MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense	19-3-22002	5-99

**Figure 4-9. T&EOs for STX 19-3-E0002.**

## CORPS MILITARY POLICE PLATOON

### STX

#### 19-3-E0003

### INTERNMENT/RESETTLEMENT OPERATIONS

**1. Objective.** This STX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks for the platoon's internment and resettlement operation.

**2. Interface.** This STX is designed to support the company FTX 19-2-E0004, Internment/Resettlement Operations. It is supported by the following military police drills (from ARTEP 19-100-10-DRILL):

- Drill 3, React to Indirect Fire
- Drill 4, React to an Ambush
- Drill 6, Dismount and Place the MK19 Machine Gun into Action
- Drill 7, Dismount and Place the M2 Machine Gun into Action
- Drill 8, Assemble and Erect OE-254/GRC Antenna System

### **3. Training.**

**a. Guidance.** The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. The trainer should also determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be conducted on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The supporting individual tasks are found at the end of each T&EO in this manual. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 95B and the soldier's common task manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task tests and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks that support a company's METL. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the mission outline in Chapter 3 and Figure 4-13.

(3) Leader Training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as other individual tasks or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is encouraged. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground while practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pam 350-100.)

**b. Training Tips.** Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX are as follows:

(1) Know the requirements for internment/resettlement operations. (See FMs 19-1 and 19-4.)

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or with live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise may be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks," constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. These conditions include full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency. However, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through

integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator of higher rank and experience should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

(g) OPFOR should be trained prior to the exercise to ensure synchronization of events.

**c. Training Enhancers.** This STX requires the platoon to perform internment/resettlement operations.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in the STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without night-vision devices.

(2) This STX may be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

(3) This STX should also be conducted in a MOUT environment.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO by the platoon and ends after prisoners have been evacuated from the AO. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your platoon's performance. Figure 4-10 provides a recommended sequence of events and time for each portion of the STX.

SEQUENCE	EVENT	ESTIMATED TIME
1	Receive mission, begin troop-leading procedures.	1.0 hr.
2	Construct prisoner collecting point	2.0 hrs.
3	Process prisoners	3.0 hrs.
4	Intermediate AAR	.5 hrs.
5	Reconnoiter the prisoner evacuation route	1.0 hrs.
6	Conduct prisoner evacuation via road march	1.5 hr.
7	Final AAR	1.0 hr.
8	Process captured documents and equipment	*
9	Collect and report intelligence	*
TOTAL TIME		10.0 hrs.

## NOTES:

- \* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.
- Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.
- Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.

**Figure 4-10. Scenario for STX 19-3-E0003.**

### **5. Special Situation.**

a. The platoon has captured enemy soldiers and civilian internees in its AO. The platoon receives the following FRAGO (Figure 4-11) to conduct internment/resettlement operations. Concurrently with the internment/resettlement mission, the platoon receives US military prisoners to be kept in custody and evacuated for trial.

b. The platoon captures enemy documents and equipment while conducting operations.



## FRAGMENTARY ORDER

### 1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. The enemy force is currently withdrawing after suffering heavy losses. Their current strength is estimated to be at 50 percent. Intelligence estimates indicate that the enemy is not prepared to counterattack at this time. Their morale is low and many soldiers are beginning to surrender to friendly forces.

b. Friendly Forces. Following a successful attack, the unit continues its pursuit of the enemy force.

2. MISSION. The platoon conducts internment operations at (grid coordinates) commencing NLT (date/time) for the purpose of securing EPW/CI and freeing combat units to continue their pursuit.

### 3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of the Operation. See overlay.

b. Tasks to subordinate elements:

(1) Establish and operate a collecting point in the vicinity (grid coordinates) commencing (date/time).

(2) Coordinate transportation to and from maneuver units.

(3) Coordinate for evacuation.

c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) All EPW/CI will be handled IAW Geneva Conventions.

(2) MOPP level 1 is in effect.

(3) All coordination for transportation will go through HQ.

(4) PIR:

--Unit designation of captured soldiers.

--Number and type of weapons confiscated.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.

**Figure 4-11. Example FRAGO for STX 19-3-E0003.**

## 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

### a. Command.

- (1) The company CP will be located at (grid coordinates).
- (2) The battalion CP will be located at (grid coordinates).
- (3) Chain of command per SOP.

### b. Signal.

- (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
- (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect.

**Figure 4-11. Continued.**

## 6. Support Requirements:

**a. Minimum Trainers and OCs:** This exercise will be conducted by the platoon leader who is the trainer and primary evaluator. If possible, there should be at least two OCs for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

**b. Vehicles and Communications:** All vehicles and radios organic to the platoon will be used.

**c. OPFOR:** The OPFOR should be at least a reinforced squad, capable of disrupting platoon internment/resettlement operations. OPFOR will also portray EPWs, CIs, and US military prisoners.

**d. Training Area:** An area of at least 4 by 15 kilometers is needed for prisoner collection and evacuation operations. The terrain should offer multiple sites and approaches to key areas. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select sites and routes best suited for the operation.

**e. Additional Equipment:** The items listed in Figure 4-12 are intended as suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items. Experience shows that additional 5-gallon water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries, basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire will also be required. Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY		
5.56 mm, blank	40 rds per M16 rifle		
5.56 mm, blank	40 rds per M4 carbine		
5.56 mm, blank linked	200 rds per M249 SAW		
Simulator, projectile, ground burst	5 each exercise		
Simulator, hand grenade	5 each exercise		
OTHER ITEMS	QUANTITY		
Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)	12 each		
Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)	140 each		
MILES EQUIPMENT	Platoon	Evaluators	OPFOR
M16/M4 system	32		1 Sqd
Controller Guns		2	
Small arms alignment fixture		1	

**Figure 4-12. Suggested Support Requirements for STX 19-3-E0003.**

**f. Other Requirements.** Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

**7. T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-13 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

TASK	NUMBERS	PAGE
Operate a Field Detention Facility for US Military Prisoners	19-3-32003	5-158
Conduct Collecting Point and Holding Area Operations	19-3-31003	5-150
Conduct Dislocated Civilian Control Operations	19-3-13001	5-73
Conduct Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance	19-3-11002	5-4
Conduct Evacuation Operations	19-3-35001	5-166
Process Captured Documents and Equipment	19-3-31005	5-156
Conduct Intelligence Collecting and Reporting	19-3-52001	5-16

**Figure 4-13. T&EOs for STX 19-3-E0003.**

**CORPS MILITARY POLICE PLATOON****STX****19-3-E0004****MP SUPPORT TO COMBAT OPERATIONS**

**1. Objective.** This STX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks in the platoon's combat support operation.

**2. Interface.** This STX supports the company FTX 19-2-E0005, MP Support to Combat Operations. It is supported by the following military police drills, ARTEP 19-100-10-DRILL:

- Drill 1, Use Traveling Overwatch Technique
- Drill 2, Use Bounding Overwatch Technique
- Drill 3, React to Indirect Fire
- Drill 4, React to an Ambush
- Drill 6, Dismount and Place the MK19 Machine Gun into Action
- Drill 7, Dismount and Place the M2 Machine Gun into Action
- Drill 8, Assemble and Erect OE-254/GRC Antenna System

**3. Training.**

**a. Guidance.** The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The supporting individual tasks are at the end of each T&EO in this manual. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 95B and the soldier's common task manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task test and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks that support a company's METL. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the mission outline in Chapter 3 and Figure 4-17.

(3) Leader Training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as other individual tasks or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground while practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pam 350-100.)

**b. Training Tips.** Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX are as follows:

(1) Know the requirements for a battle handover, delay, screen, and movement to contact. (FMs 7-8, 19-1 and 19-4.)

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using several options:

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or with live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise can be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks," constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. These conditions include full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency. However, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator of higher rank and experience should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

(g) OPFOR should be trained prior to the exercise to ensure synchronization of events.

**c. Training Enhancers.** This STX requires the platoon to perform a battle handover, delay/withdrawal, and screen.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in the STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without night-vision devices.

(2) This STX may be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

(3) This STX should also be conducted in a MOUT environment.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO by the platoon and ends when battle handover to TCF is completed. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your platoon's performance. Figure 4-14 provides a recommended sequence of events and time for each portion of the STX.

#### **5. Special Situation.**

The platoon receives the following FRAGO (Figure 4-15) to provide support for combat operations.

SEQUENCE	EVENT	ESTIMATED TIME
1	Receive mission, begin troop-leading procedures.	2.0 hrs.
2	Conduct a delay.	4.0 hrs.
3	Intermediate AAR	.5 hrs.
4	Conduct screen for TCF and handover the battle to a TCF	3.0 hrs.
5	Conduct response force operations.	2.0 hrs.
6	Conduct a movement to contact and a hasty attack	1.0 hr.
7	Final AAR	.5 hrs.
TOTAL TIME		13.0 hrs.

NOTES:

- Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.
- Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.

**Figure 4-14. Scenario for STX 19-3-E0004.**

<p><b>FRAGMENTARY ORDER</b></p> <p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p>a. Enemy Forces. Level III threat has penetrated into the corps rear area. They are expected to attempt to disrupt rear operations.</p> <p>b. Friendly Forces. The corps is currently in a defensive posture while preparing for future offensive operations.</p> <p>2. MISSION. (who, what, when, where, why)</p>
--

**Figure 4-15. Example FRAGO for STX 19-3-E0004.**

### 3. EXECUTION:

a. Concept of the Operation. (See overlay.) The purpose of the mission is to conduct operations in the rear area to disrupt enemy activity. We will conduct delaying operations to a battle handover line where we will transition with the TCF. Endstate is defined as a smooth handoff with the TCF to ensure unimpeded operations within the rear area.

#### b. Tasks for subordinate elements.

- (1) Provide early and accurate warning when screening.
- (2) Provide reaction time and maneuver space when screening.
- (3) Establish initial and subsequent screen lines.

#### c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Priority of movement on the MSRs--combat units, followed by support to combat units in contact (Class III, Class V, and Class VIII).

(2) MOPP Level 1 in effect.

(3) PIR:

- ° Potential enemy LZs/DZs.
- ° Likely avenues of approach.

### 4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.

### 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

#### a. Command.

- (1) The company CP will be located at (grid).
- (2) The battalion CP will be located at (grid).
- (3) Chain of command per SOP.

#### b. Signal.

- (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
- (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect: KTC 1400D

**Figure 4-15. Continued.**



**6. Support Requirements:**

**a. Minimum Trainers and OCs:** This exercise will be conducted by the platoon leader who is the trainer and primary evaluator. If possible, have at least two OCs for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

**b. Vehicles and Communications:** All vehicles and radios organic to the platoon will be used.

**c. OPFOR:** The support personnel should be used in this exercise after the platoon demonstrates basic proficiency. One platoon of OPFOR personnel is sufficient for a platoon exercise.

**d. Training Area:** An area of at least 3 by 3 kilometers is needed for adequate training of this exercise. The selected area should include all five basic military terrain features as well as buildings, roadways, and streams. Vegetation and terrain should allow for cover and concealment of patrols and OPFOR. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select sites and routes best suited for the operation.

**e. Additional Equipment:** The items listed in Figure 4-16 are suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items. Experience dictates that the training will also require additional 5-gallon water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries, basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire.

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY		
5.56 mm, blank	80 rds per M16 rifle		
5.56 mm, blank	80 rds per M4 carbine		
5.56 mm, blank linked	600 rds per M249 SAW		
Simulator, projectile, ground burst	20 each exercise		
Simulator, hand grenade	20 each exercise		
OTHER ITEMS	QUANTITY		
Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)	12 each		
Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)	140 each		
MILES EQUIPMENT	Platoon	Evaluators	OPFOR
M16/M4 system	32		1 Plt
Controller Guns		2	
Small arms alignment fixture		1	

**Figure 4-16. Suggested Support Requirements for STX 19-3-E0004.**

**f. Other Requirements.** Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

7. **T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-17 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

TASK	NUMBERS	PAGE
Delay the Enemy	19-3-22007	5-29
Conduct a Screen	19-3-22012	5-51
Conduct Response Force Operations	19-3-22001	5-26
Conduct Movement to Contact	19-3-22009	5-37
Conduct a Hasty Attack	19-3-22011	5-48

**Figure 4-17. T&EOs for STX 19-3-E0004.**

## CORPS MILITARY POLICE PLATOON

### STX

#### 19-3-E0005

### MP SUPPORT TO BATTLEFIELD MOVEMENT

1. **Objective.** This STX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks for the platoon's maneuver and mobility support operation.

2. **Interface.** This STX supports the company FTX 19-2-E0006, MP Support to Battlefield Movement. It is supported by the following military police drills, ARTEP 19-100-10-DRILL:

- Drill 1, Use Traveling Overwatch Technique
- Drill 2, Use Bounding Overwatch Technique
- Drill 3, React to Indirect Fire
- Drill 4, React to an Ambush
- Drill 6, Dismount and Place the MK19 Machine Gun into Action
- Drill 7, Dismount and Place the M2 Machine Gun into Action
- Drill 8, Assemble and Erect OE-254/GRC Antenna System

### 3. **Training.**

a. **Guidance.** The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The supporting individual tasks are at the end of each T&EO in this manual. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 95B and the soldier's common task manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task tests and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks that support the company's METL. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad and platoon collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the mission outline in Chapter 3 and Figure 4-21.

(3) Leader Training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as other individual tasks or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and/or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground while practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pam 350-100.)

**b. Training Tips.** Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX are as follows:

(1) Know the requirements for river crossing and passage of lines. (See FMs 19-1 and 19-4.)

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) Coordinate for passage lanes, attack positions, supporting fires, and exchange of information with the passing unit:

(a) Enemy situation.

(b) Passing unit's rearward positions.

(c) Contact points.

(d) LPs/OPs/patrol routes.

(e) Passage points.

(f) Passage lanes.

(g) Obstacles/contaminated areas.

(h) Main battle area initial positions.

(i) Command post for passing unit during passage.

(j) Assembly area for passing unit.

(k) Combat support/combat service support locations for emergency support.

(l) Traffic control points.

(m) SOI information.

(5) Conduct traffic control measures:

(a) FORWARD: Emphasize functions of MP at the contact points, passage points, passage lanes, and the assembly areas in the corps.

(b) REARWARD: MP will begin to support the rearward passage of lines once the passing units have the passage lane and enter the route to the assembly area.

(6) Coordinate communications, especially exchange of SOI, frequencies of the passing and stationary units, and challenge and password with the direct support platoon. All MPs involved in the passage of lines need to know the following:

- Recognition signals the passing unit will display.
- Exact locations where elements of the passing unit will appear in front of them.
- Number and types of vehicles that will need to be escorted or assisted from their assembly areas along the routes to the contact points/passage lanes.

(7) This STX may be conducted using several options:

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or with live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise can be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.

(8) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks," constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. These conditions include full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency. However, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator of higher rank and experience should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

(g) OPFOR should be trained prior to the exercise to ensure synchronization of the events.

**c. Training Enhancers.** This STX requires the platoon to perform a river crossing, passage of lines, and to move tactically.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in the STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without night-vision devices.

(2) This STX may be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

(3) This STX should also be conducted in a MOUT environment.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO by the platoon and ends when passage of lines is completed. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your platoon's performance. Figure 4-18 provides a recommended sequence of events and time for each portion of the STX.

SEQUENCE	EVENT	ESTIMATED TIME
1	Receive mission, begin troop-leading procedures.	1.0 hr.
2	Prepare for river crossing	3.0 hrs.
3	Cross river	1.0 hrs.
4	Intermediate AAR	.5 hrs.
5	Coordinate for passage of lines	.5 hrs.
6	Conduct passage of lines	2.0 hrs.
7	Final AAR	.5
8	Move tactically	*
TOTAL TIME		8.5 hrs.
<p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* This task is integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</li> <li>° Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.</li> <li>° Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</li> </ul>		

**Figure 4-18. Scenario for STX 19-3-E0005.**

#### **5. Special Situation.**

The platoon has received orders to prepare for and support a major battlefield movement to include a river crossing and passage of lines. The platoon receives the following FRAGO, Figure 4-19.

### FRAGMENTARY ORDER

1. SITUATION.

- a. Enemy Forces. The enemy threat consists of Levels I and II activity in the corps AO.
- b. Friendly Forces. The corps is currently in a defensive posture while preparing for future offensive operations. Heavy military traffic will occur on MSRs within the next 48 hours to resupply forward elements.

2. MISSION. The platoon provides MP support to rear operations.

3. EXECUTION:

a. Concept of the Operation. (See Overlay.)

(1) Intent. The purpose of the mission is to maintain freedom of movement for authorized traffic. The method we will use is support to river crossing operations and passage of line operations within our area of operations. Endstate is defined as unimpeded movement of supplies to the forward combat elements.

(2) Fire Support. Priority of fire goes to base/base cluster defense.

b. Tasks for subordinate elements. Conduct river crossing and passage of lines operations.

c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Priority of movement on the MSRs--combat units, followed by support to combat units in contact (Class III, Class V, and Class VIII).

(2) MOPP Level 1 in effect.

(3) Submit SITREPS to this HQ daily at 0600 hrs and 1800 hrs.

(4) PIR:

- Any information on possible enemy locations, size, and activity.
- Any reportable restrictions to the route.
- Any changes along MSR that may disrupt movement of traffic.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.

Figure 4-19. Example FRAGO for STX 19-3-E0005.

## 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

### a. Command.

- (1) The company CP will be located at (grid).
- (2) The battalion CP will be located at (grid).
- (3) Chain of command per SOP.

### b. Signal.

- (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
- (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect: KTC 1400D.

**Figure 4-19. Continued.**

## 6. Support Requirements:

**a. Minimum Trainers and OCs:** This exercise will be conducted by the platoon leader who is the trainer and primary evaluator. If possible, there should be at least two OCs for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

**b. Vehicles and Communications:** All vehicles and radios organic to the platoon will be used. If a crossing area commander's HQ is used, additional radios will be required. Use of an OPFOR will require a radio for the OPFOR evaluator. The platoon will also need additional vehicles and personnel to act as the crossing force.

**c. OPFOR:** Support personnel should be used in this exercise after the platoon shows basic proficiency. One squad of OPFOR personnel is sufficient for a platoon exercise.

**d. Training Area:** An area of at least 2 by 3 kilometers is needed for this exercise. The terrain should include a river or stream with suitable bridge and fording sites. It should also include a road net on each side and multiple covered and concealed approaches.

**e. Additional Equipment:** The items listed in Figure 4-20 are suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items. Experience dictates that the training will also require additional 5-gallon water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries, basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire

**f. Other Requirements.** Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.



AMMUNITION	QUANTITY		
5.56 mm, blank	40 rds per M16 rifle		
5.56 mm, blank	40 rds per M4 carbine		
5.56 mm, blank linked	200 rds per M249 SAW		
Simulator, projectile, ground burst	10 each exercise		
Simulator, hand grenade	10 each exercise		
OTHER ITEMS	QUANTITY		
Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)	12 each		
Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)	140 each		
MILES EQUIPMENT	Platoon	Evaluators	OPFOR
M16/M4 system	32		1 Sqd
Controller Guns		2	
Small arms alignment fixture		1	

**Figure 4-20. Suggested Support Requirements for STX 19-3-E0005.**

**7. T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-21 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

TASK	NUMBERS	PAGE
Conduct MP Support to a River Crossing	19-3-11001	5-18
Conduct MP Support to Passage of Lines	19-3-12004	5-22
Conduct Battle Handover to a Tactical Combat Force	19-3-22008	5-34

**Figure 4-21. T&EOs for STX 19-3-E0005.**

## CHAPTER 5

### Training and Evaluation Outlines

**5-1. Introduction.** This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer should refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

**5-2. Structure.** The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Table 5-1. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

**5-3. Format.** The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

**a. Element.** This identifies the units or the unit elements that perform the task.

**b. Task.** This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.

**c. References.** These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

**d. Iteration.** Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.

**e. Commander/Leader Assessment.** This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

(1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

(2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

(3) U - Untrained. The unit can not demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

(4) ? - Unknown. Unit training has not been assessed.

**f. Condition.** The condition is a statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

**g. Task Standard.**

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-TC conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

**h. Task Steps and Performance Measures.** This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (\*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

**i. GO/NO-GO Column.** This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

**j. Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block.** This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO". It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO". It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

**k. Supporting Individual Tasks.** This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, task number, and task title.

**l. OPFOR Standards.** These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished -- not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

**5-4. Use.** The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

**Intelligence**

Conduct Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance (19-3-11002) ..... 5-4  
 Conduct an Area Reconnaissance (19-3-20002) ..... 5-8  
 Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance (19-3-20003)..... 5-12  
 Conduct Intelligence Collecting and Reporting (19-3-52001)..... 5-16

**Maneuver**

Provide MP Support to a River Crossing (19-3-11001)..... 5-18  
 Provide MP Support to a Passage of Lines Operation (19-3-12004) ..... 5-22  
 Conduct Response Force Operations (19-3-22001) ..... 5-26  
 Delay the Enemy (19-3-22007)..... 5-29  
 Conduct Battle Handover to a Tactical Combat Force (19-3-22008) ..... 5-34  
 Conduct a Movement to Contact (19-3-22009) ..... 5-37  
 Conduct a Deliberate Attack (19-3-22010) ..... 5-42  
 Conduct a Hasty Attack (19-3-22011) ..... 5-48  
 Conduct a Screen (19-3-22012) ..... 5-51  
 Occupy A Site (19-3-60003) ..... 5-56  
 Defend Unit Position (7-3-C212)..... 5-58  
 Perform a Tactical Road March (7-3-C227)..... 5-61

**Mobility and Survivability**

React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209) .....	5-64
Conduct Route Regulation Enforcement (19-3-12002) .....	5-66
Perform Temporary Route Signing (19-3-12003) .....	5-70
Conduct Dislocated Civilian Control Operations (19-3-13001) .....	5-73
Conduct Straggler Control Operations (19-3-13002) .....	5-76
Conduct Convoy Security (19-3-20004) .....	5-80
Conduct Security of Conventional Ammunition Supply Point (19-3-20008) .....	5-84
Provide Support for Deep-Water Port Security (19-3-20009) .....	5-87
Conduct Pipeline Security (19-3-20010) .....	5-90
Conduct Railway Security (19-3-20011) .....	5-93
Provide Security for Designated Persons (19-3-21001) .....	5-95
Provide MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense (19-3-22002) .....	5-99
Conduct Security of a Critical Site (19-3-22004) .....	5-102
Conduct Security of a Command Post (19-3-22005) .....	5-105
Conduct a Cordon and Search (19-3-22006) .....	5-109
Conduct Radiological Survey (3-3-1041) .....	5-112
Prepare For A Chemical Attack (3-3-C202) .....	5-115
Respond To A Chemical Attack (3-3-C203) .....	5-117
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (3-3-C205) .....	5-119
Prepare For Nuclear Attack (3-3-C206) .....	5-121
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (3-3-C208) .....	5-123
Respond To The Residual Effects Of A Nuclear Attack (3-3-C222) .....	5-125
Respond To The Initial Effects Of A Nuclear Attack (3-3-C223) .....	5-127
Conduct Operational Decontamination (3-3-C224) .....	5-130
Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance (3-3-C225) .....	5-134
Cross A Chemically Contaminated Area (3-3-C226) .....	5-136
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (5-3-C210) .....	5-138
Maintain Operations Security (71-3-C232) .....	5-140

**Air Defense**

Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-3-C220) .....	5-143
--	-------

**Combat Service Support**

Conduct Unit Deployment (19-3-10001) .....	5-145
Support Area Damage Control Operations (19-3-20001) .....	5-147
Conduct Collecting Point and Holding Area Operations (19-3-31003) .....	5-150
Perform Field Processing of Enemy Prisoners of War (19-3-31004) .....	5-154
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-31005) .....	5-156
Operate a Field Detention Facility for US Military Prisoners (19-3-32003) .....	5-158
Provide MP Support to Populace and Resource Control Operations (19-3-33001) .....	5-161
Provide MP Support to Noncombatant Evacuation Operations (19-3-34001) .....	5-163
Conduct Evacuation Operations (19-3-35001) .....	5-166
Perform Platoon-Level Law and Order Operations (19-3-40001) .....	5-169
Conduct Platoon-Level Civil Disturbance Control Operations (19-3-40003) .....	5-172
Occupy Assembly Area (7-3-C228) .....	5-176
Treat Casualties (8-3-0003) .....	5-179
Transport Casualties (8-3-C316) .....	5-183

**Command and Control**

Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-C214) .....	5-187
--	-------

**Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance (19-3-11002)  
(FM 5-36) (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The commander has directed the MP platoon to conduct route reconnaissance and surveillance on all routes in the platoon's area. The proposed traffic circulation plan and control plan are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon conducts reconnaissance and surveillance to include information collection and dissemination, the use of mobile patrols, and identification of critical points and likely sites for enemy activity. A reconnaissance report is prepared and submitted to higher headquarters.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures for the route reconnaissance and surveillance mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts a map reconnaissance of all routes in the platoon's area of operations.</li> <li>b. Identifies critical information for the squads to reconnoiter:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Potential ambush sites.</li> <li>(2) Choke points.</li> <li>(3) Road restrictions.</li> <li>(4) Fording sites.</li> <li>(5) Other measures which holding areas may impede traffic flow.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Designates squad sectors.</li> <li>d. Selects and briefs personnel.</li> <li>e. Determines emergency courses of action in event of enemy contact.</li> <li>f. Coordinates with logistics bases and base clusters in AO.</li> <li>g. Coordinates logistical support for regulatory signs and signals requirements.</li> <li>h. Briefs MP company commander and/or higher headquarters.</li> <li>i. Issues orders.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Platoon sergeant provides support requirements for the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts precombat checks and inspections.</li> <li>b. Assists platoon leader in planning the mission.</li> <li>c. Develops vehicle recovery plan.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for class I, III, V, and VIII supplies.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Squad leader prepares for reconnaissance mission within sector.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designates a reconnaissance element and a security element.</li> <li>b. Identifies locations and/or characteristics of road obstructions.</li> <li>c. Identifies road and traffic conditions.</li> <li>d. Collects information concerning driving times and distances between various points.</li> <li>e. Identifies potential ambush areas and defensive positions.</li> <li>f. Identifies areas where terrain restricts communications.</li> <li>g. Identifies area where traffic volume is likely to be heaviest.</li> <li>h. Identifies locations and characteristics of likely traffic congestion areas.</li> <li>i. Identifies location, condition, and effectiveness of present traffic control devices.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>j. Identifies location of installations, units, and facilities in assigned area.                      k. Locates potential dislocated civilian collection points, camps, and routes.                      l. Identifies locations for straggler control posts or collecting points.                      m. Identifies key terrain to be reconnoitered near or off the route.</p> <p>4. Teams conduct mobile patrols.</p> <p>a. Report information concerning road conditions, status of existing traffic and guide signs, and need for additional signs.                      b. Observe movement and actions of persons in the area.                      c. Question road users for intelligence information.                      d. Direct traffic as needed.                      e. Call for wrecker or other emergency equipment, as needed.                      f. Give directions and road information.                      g. Direct stragglers to military unit or collecting point.                      h. Monitor movement of dislocated civilians within patrol area.</p> <p>* 5. Team leader prepares route reconnaissance report.</p> <p>a. Prepares written report which contains, as a minimum--                      (1) Route information.                      (2) Information of intelligence value.                      (3) Circulation control information.</p> <p>b. Prepares route overlay which contains, as a minimum--                      (1) Critical points along the route.                      (2) Route and road classification formula.                      (3) Circulation control measures.                      (4) Title block.                      (5) Grid north arrow.</p> <p>c. Prepares DA Form 1248 (Road Reconnaissance Report) if required.                      d. Submits route reconnaissance report and overlay to platoon headquarters.</p> <p>6. Platoon sergeant processes reports and overlays.</p> <p>a. Checks reports and overlays.                      b. Consolidates team and squad overlays.</p> <p>* 7. Platoon leader submits the consolidated report and overlay to the company operations center.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	071-329-1030	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE
	551-721-1360	GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT, MOUNTED
		DRIVE CARGO VEHICLE ON SIDE ROADS
		AND UNIMPROVED ROADS

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title	
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	051-196-2019	CONDUCT AND REPORT A HASTY ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE	
	051-196-3019	PLAN, SUPERVISE, AND REPORT THE RESULTS OF HASTY ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE	
	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD	
	071-332-5000	PREPARE AN OPERATION OVERLAY	
	071-332-5050	MONITOR OPERATIONS/MOVEMENTS OF SUBORDINATE UNITS	
	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD	
	191-379-4412	PLAN STRAGGLER CONTROL OPERATIONS	
	191-379-4416	DEVELOP A MILITARY POLICE PLATOON TRAFFIC CONTROL PLAN	
	STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
		STP 21-24-SMCT	051-196-3065
071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER		
071-326-5805	CONDUCT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE MISSION		
071-329-1019	USE A MAP OVERLAY		
071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN		
091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS		

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1003)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Sustain minimum casualties. 8. Report actions to superiors.

**TASK: CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8.

Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1005)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular, and/or irregular elements in the enemy rear area along main supply routes and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** 1. Set up well-concealed locations. 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected targets. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being detected. 6. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.



**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct an Area Reconnaissance (19-3-20002)  
(FM 19-4) (FM 7-8 (HTF))

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon receives orders from higher headquarters to conduct an area reconnaissance in sector. The platoon has information on threat analysis and friendly units in sector, PIR, CCIR, specific areas to be reconnoitered, and control measures to be used. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon conducts a reconnaissance of its assigned area, collects and reports required information, and avoids enemy contact until relieved of responsibility.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader prepares for reconnaissance patrol by initiating troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts estimate of the situation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts detailed mission analysis.</li> <li>(2) Includes understanding and restating the mission.</li> <li>(3) Uses the backward planning sequence to schedule troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>(4) Designates reconnaissance and security teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Issues warning order to all squads.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Includes a mission statement (who, what, where, when, and why).</li> <li>(2) Includes friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>(3) Includes general and special instructions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Makes a tentative plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Analyzes mission using METT-TC information.</li> <li>(2) Compares courses of action.</li> <li>(3) Makes a decision that produces the tentative plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Directs movement and reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a leader's reconnaissance that may be a map, photo, or aerial reconnaissance, if available.</li> <li>(2) Identifies key terrain, danger areas, choke points, likely enemy positions, and likely restrictions along the route and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>(3) Determines control measures to include phase lines and limits of advance.</li> <li>(4) Requests intelligence from higher headquarters.</li> <li>(5) Performs necessary reorganizations as soon as possible.</li> <li>(6) Develops a platoon scheme of maneuver IAW METT-TC focusing on direct scout teams along an axis or route.</li> <li>(7) Directs team leaders to develop and brief maneuver plans to their teams.</li> <li>(8) Directs platoon to move to assembly area or attack position prior to crossing the LD.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Completes the plan including requests for information through host nation, allied forces, and US units.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Completes plan.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Briefs higher headquarters and supporting agencies.</p> <p>f. Issues completed plan to the platoon using a sketch or terrain model to assist in the briefing.</p> <p>g. Supervises the precombat inspection.</p> <p>(1) Conducts a spot-check of weapons and equipment.</p> <p>(2) Inspects mission-essential equipment.</p> <p>(3) Supervises rehearsals.</p> <p>* 2. Platoon sergeant assists in planning including coordination of logistical equipment for the mission.</p> <p>a. Assists platoon leader in planning the operation.</p> <p>b. Moves platoon to an assembly area or attack position, as required.</p> <p>c. Conducts precombat inspection of individual soldier equipment.</p> <p>d. Supervises rehearsals with the platoon leader.</p> <p>e. Ensures communications are established and maintained with higher headquarters and elements within the formation.</p> <p>f. Coordinates for class I, III, V, and VIII supplies.</p> <p>g. Plans for medical evacuation.</p> <p>3. Squads/teams move to and deploy along the LD.</p> <p>a. Use the organization specified by the platoon leader or the OPORD.</p> <p>b. Use specified formations.</p> <p>c. Implement control measures to include phase lines and limits of advance.</p> <p>4. Squads/teams conduct tactical movement to their assigned area.</p> <p>a. Ensure security elements provide security for R&amp;S teams.</p> <p>b. Ensure security teams deploy prior to deploying R&amp;S teams.</p> <p>c. Establish support elements to provide overwatch if necessary.</p> <p>d. Establish primary and secondary signals in the event of enemy penetration into the area being reconnoitered.</p> <p>5. Squads/teams identify and report all enemy forces within the area.</p> <p>a. Identify enemy elements using SALUTE report format.</p> <p>b. Conduct actions on contact:</p> <p>(1) Seek cover and concealment.</p> <p>(2) Return fire while using appropriate battle drill.</p> <p>(3) Choose course of action that allows freedom from enemy contact.</p> <p>c. Collect and report on the following:</p> <p>(1) Enemy location to include support units and weapons.</p> <p>(2) Enemy strength and composition.</p> <p>(3) Enemy activity.</p> <p>(4) Possible avenues of approach for reaction force.</p> <p>6. Squads/teams collect and report information.</p> <p>a. Determine trafficability of major routes to and from the objective.</p> <p>b. Determine trafficability of terrain around the objective.</p> <p>c. Locate suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges around the objective.</p> <p>d. Locate and evaluate all bridges within the area.</p> <p>e. Locate and evaluate all tunnels and underpasses within the area.</p> <p>f. Locate minefields, obstacles, and built-up areas within the area.</p> <p>g. Submit reports and overlays to platoon headquarters.</p> <p>* 7. Platoon sergeant checks the teams' reports for accuracy.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 8. Platoon leader consolidates and reorganizes the platoon upon completion of the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts sensitive items check of all equipment and personnel.</li> <li>b. Conducts AAR of the mission to identify lessons learned and information received.</li> <li>c. Submits information and intelligence collected to higher headquarters for analysis.</li> <li>d. Consolidates and submits reports and overlays to company operations center.</li> <li>e. Prepares for future operations.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24	051-196-4012	CONDUCT A PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSION
	071-326-5805	CONDUCT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE MISSION
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD
	071-332-5050	MONITOR OPERATIONS/MOVEMENTS OF SUBORDINATE UNITS
	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
STP 21-1-SMCT	191-379-4416	DEVELOP A MILITARY POLICE PLATOON TRAFFIC CONTROL PLAN
	071-326-0510	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE WHILE DISMOUNTED
STP 21-24-SMCT	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
	051-196-3065	PREPARE A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE OVERLAY
	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-720-0015	CONDUCT AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE BY A PLATOON
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance (19-3-20003)  
(FM 19-4) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon receives an order from higher headquarters to conduct a zone reconnaissance in sector. The platoon is given information on the threat analysis and friendly units in sector, PIR, CCIR, areas to be reconnoitered, and control measures to be used. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon conducts a reconnaissance of the assigned zone and collects and reports required information regarding terrain, obstacles, and enemy forces. It reacts to enemy forces as appropriate and continues the mission until relieved.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader prepares for the reconnaissance patrol by initiating troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts an estimate of the situation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a detailed mission analysis.</li> <li>(2) Includes understanding and restating the mission.</li> <li>(3) Uses backward planning sequence to schedule troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>(4) Designates reconnaissance and security teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Issues warning order to all squads.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Includes a mission statement (who, what, where, when, and why).</li> <li>(2) Includes friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>(3) Includes general and special instructions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Makes a tentative plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Analyzes the mission using METT-TC information.</li> <li>(2) Analyzes courses of action.</li> <li>(3) Make a decision that produces the tentative plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Directs movement and reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a leader's reconnaissance that may be a map or photo reconnaissance, if available.</li> <li>(2) Identifies key terrain, danger areas, likely enemy positions, and likely restrictions along the route and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>(3) Determines control measures to include phase lines and limits of advance.</li> <li>(4) Requests intelligence from higher headquarters.</li> <li>(5) Performs necessary reorganization as soon as possible.</li> <li>(6) Develops a platoon scheme of maneuver IAW METT-TC focusing on directing scout teams along an axis or route by assigning fan coverage, converging routes, or successive routes of march to zone.</li> <li>(7) Directs team leader to develop and brief maneuver plans to their teams.</li> <li>(8) Directs the platoon to move to assembly area or attack positions prior to crossing the LD.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Completes the plan.</li> <li>f. Briefs higher headquarters and supporting agencies on the plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Issues the plan to the platoon using a sketch or terrain model to assist in the briefing.</li> <li>h. Supervises the precombat check.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a spot-check of weapons and mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>(2) Supervises rehearsals.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon sergeant assists in planning including coordination of logistical support for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assists platoon leader in planning.</li> <li>b. Moves platoon to an assembly or attack position.</li> <li>c. Conducts a precombat inspection of personnel and equipment.</li> <li>d. Supervises rehearsals with the platoon leader.</li> <li>e. Ensures communications are established and maintained with higher headquarters and elements within the formation.</li> <li>f. Coordinates for class I, III, V, and VIII supplies.</li> <li>g. Plans for medical evacuation.</li> </ul> <p>3. Squads/teams move to and deploy along the LD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use the organization specified by the platoon leader or the OPORD.</li> <li>b. Use specified formations.</li> <li>c. Implement control measures to include phase lines and limits of advance.</li> </ul> <p>4. Squads/teams conduct tactical movement in their assigned zone using one of the three techniques specified by the platoon leader or OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use the fan method:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Select a series of ORPs throughout the zone.</li> <li>(2) At the first ORP, halt and setup security.</li> <li>(3) After confirmation is made of the patrol's location, select reconnaissance routes out from the back to the ORP. These routes form a fan-shaped pattern around the ORP. They must overlap to ensure the entire area has been reconnoitered.</li> <li>(4) Once the routes have been selected, send out reconnaissance elements along the routes.</li> <li>(5) Ensure a reserve is maintained at ORP.</li> <li>(6) Send elements out on adjacent routes to keep from making contact in two different directions ensuring control measures are established to prevent fratricide.</li> <li>(7) After the area has been reconnoitered, report information to higher headquarters.</li> <li>(8) Move the patrol to the next ORP and repeat the process.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Use the converging routes method:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Select the ORP, reconnoiter routes, and a rendezvous point. (The rendezvous point is a place where the patrol members link up after the reconnaissance.)</li> <li>(2) At the ORP, the patrol halts and sets up security.</li> <li>(3) Patrols confirm locations.</li> <li>(4) Designate a route for each reconnaissance element, a location for the rendezvous, and a linkup time at the rendezvous point.</li> <li>(5) Send reconnaissance elements to reconnoiter. (Usually using the fan method along each route.)</li> <li>(6) At the link up, the patrol secures the rendezvous point as it did at the ORP.</li> <li>(7) While at the rendezvous point, information gained by each member is exchanged with all patrol members.</li> <li>(8) Patrol submits information found and returns to friendly lines.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Use the successive sectors method:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Build on the converging routes method.</li> <li>(2) Select an ORP and a series of routes and rendezvous points.</li> <li>(3) From each ORP to each rendezvous point, use the converging routes method. (Each rendezvous point becomes the ORP for the next phase.)</li> <li>(4) Once the patrol links up at a rendezvous point, routes are designated, a linkup time established, and the next rendezvous point identified.</li> <li>(5) Continue with this action until the entire zone has been reconnoitered.</li> </ol> <p>d. Survey all checkpoints within the area of responsibility.</p> <p>e. Stay on line to prevent gaps in the platoon's movement.</p> <p>f. Survey all dominant terrain within boundaries.</p> <p>5. Squads/teams identify and report all enemy forces within the zone.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify enemy elements using SALUTE report format.</li> <li>b. Conduct actions on contact.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Seek cover and concealment.</li> <li>(2) Return fire while using appropriate battle drill.</li> <li>(3) Choose course of action that allows freedom from enemy contact.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Collect and report on the following:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy location to include supporting units and weapons.</li> <li>(2) Enemy strength and composition.</li> <li>(3) Enemy activity.</li> <li>(4) Possible avenues of approach for the reaction force.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>6. Squads/teams report information.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determine trafficability of major routes.</li> <li>b. Determine trafficability of terrain.</li> <li>c. Locate suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges.</li> <li>d. Locate and evaluate all bridges within the zone.</li> <li>e. Locate and evaluate all tunnels and underpasses within the zone.</li> <li>f. Locate minefields, obstacles, and built-up areas within the zone.</li> <li>g. Submit reports and overlays to platoon headquarters.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. Platoon sergeant checks teams' reports and overlays for accuracy.</p> <p>* 8. Platoon leader consolidates and reorganizes the platoon upon completion of the mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts sensitive items check of all equipment and personnel.</li> <li>b. Conducts an AAR of the mission to identify lessons learned and information received.</li> <li>c. Submits information and intelligence collected to higher headquarters for analysis.</li> <li>d. Prepares for future operations.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	071-329-1030	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT, MOUNTED
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	051-196-4012	CONDUCT A PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSION
	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD
	071-332-5021	PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY SITUATION MAP
	071-332-5050	MONITOR OPERATIONS/MOVEMENTS OF SUBORDINATE UNITS
	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
	191-379-4416	DEVELOP A MILITARY POLICE PLATOON TRAFFIC CONTROL PLAN
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 21-24-SMCT	051-196-3065	PREPARE A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE OVERLAY
	071-326-5805	CONDUCT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE MISSION
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-720-0015	CONDUCT AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE BY A PLATOON

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****NONE:**



**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Intelligence Collecting and Reporting (19-3-52001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The MP platoon is conducting operations in its area of responsibility. During the course of normal operations, it will have close contact with the soldiers, the local populace, and host-nation police forces. The platoon has been notified of the commander's PIR and IR. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** As the MP platoon members patrol, they gather information about the terrain, weather, HUMINT, and any activities in the area of operations. Information of potential intelligence value is passed up through the chain of command for further analysis.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures for the intelligence mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with higher headquarters for the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Commander's critical information requirements.</li> <li>(2) Priority information requirements.</li> <li>(3) Threat estimates.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Establishes liaison with civil and military police forces and law enforcement agencies in the area of operations.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with local host-nation police agencies to determine the existence of organized crime in the area, as well as identification of current and emerging criminal leaders and their associates.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with local host-nation police and local populace to identify types of criminal activity in the area (such as smuggling vice, counterfeiting, narcotics, extortion).</li> </ul> <p>2. Platoon members actively seek sources of information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Collect reconnaissance and surveillance information that supports the commander's overall PIR collection effort while on routine patrol.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Note terrain information pertaining to streets, roads, canals, subterranean systems, built-up areas, cities and villages, and weather impacts on specific terrain.</li> <li>(2) Collect information on pro- and antigovernment individuals and groups who might disrupt law and order during protests, strikes, riots, and other spontaneous or organized efforts.</li> <li>(3) Identify private establishments that may be a target for or whose presence or operations contribute to the disruption of law and order such as gun shops, pawnshops, and liquor stores.</li> <li>(4) Identify critical infrastructures such as power stations, waterworks, radio and television stations, telephone and communication facilities, public transportation, and other establishments that may be critical to the sustenance of the community.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. During processing, identify EPWs, stragglers, and dislocated civilians who may have information of potential intelligence value, and report to the chain of command.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Platoon leader reports information of potential intelligence value.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Gathers collected information from squads and teams. b. Consolidates information and any sketches from the collection process. c. Forwards information to higher headquarters for analysis and determination of intelligence value.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	051-196-4012	CONDUCT A PLATOON RECONNAISSANCE MISSION
	071-720-0015	CONDUCT AN AREA RECONNAISSANCE BY A PLATOON
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (19-OPFOR-1008)

**CONDITION:** Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

**STANDARD:** 1. Identify all priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning device undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Provide MP Support to a River Crossing (19-3-11001)  
(FM 90-13) (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The crossing force has been given the mission to conduct a river crossing, and the platoon has been directed to support that crossing. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon implements circulation control measures that permit the crossing force to move into and exit from the crossing area.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader develops a traffic control plan to support the circulation plan for the crossing site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Plans the development of MP resources necessary to maneuver and mobility operations and to control traffic in the AO leading into the crossing area.</li> <li>b. Plans the employment of MP resources necessary to control traffic in the staging areas on the entrance bank.</li> <li>c. Plans the employment of MP resources necessary to control traffic holding areas on the entrance and exit banks.</li> <li>d. Plans the employment of MP resources necessary to control traffic along routes within the entire crossing site.</li> <li>e. Coordinates requirements and responsibilities with the crossing area commander and higher headquarters operations section.</li> <li>f. Back-briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>g. Issues orders and briefs key personnel on support requirements, assigned missions, and areas of operation.</li> </ul> <p>2. Platoon sergeant coordinates support requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests needed class I, III, IV, V, VIII, IX supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinates medical support and medical evacuation.</li> <li>c. Assists the platoon leader in planning for the operation.</li> <li>d. Conducts a precombat inspection.</li> <li>e. Ensures communications are established.</li> <li>f. Updates existing overlay or develops an overlay showing traffic regulating line, ERP, and other control measures.</li> </ul> <p>3. Teams provide support to the operation at the entrance bank.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Keep traffic flowing, prevent vehicle congestion up to and including the crossing site.</li> <li>b. Operate staging areas outside the crossing area on the entrance bank to hold convoys until their designated departure time.</li> <li>c. Operate TCPs at staging areas and holding areas to control movement to and from those areas. TCPs should be collocated with ERPs.</li> <li>d. Place temporary signs along the route to guide crossing units to their proper locations.</li> <li>e. Conduct mobile patrols to control traffic between the staging area and crossing area and to ensure no one tampers with the signs.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Report the movement of units and convoys past TCPs to the echelon transportation office.</p> <p>g. Relay movement information from the transportation office to moving units.</p> <p>h. Enforce orders and regulations, placing emphasis on movement.</p> <p>i. Conduct straggler and dislocated civilian control operations.</p> <p>j. Accept EPW from passing units.</p> <p>k. Set up and operate a temporary collecting point.</p> <p>l. Clear all vehicles with the ERPs.</p> <p>m. Use mobile patrols to gather information and locate small-scale enemy activity.</p> <p>4. Teams provide support to the operation at the crossing area.</p> <p>a. Establish TCPs as required.</p> <p>b. Enforce MSR regulations and speed.</p> <p>c. Enforce vehicle interval limits.</p> <p>d. Check traffic for all vehicles at the ERP to ensure crossing limitations are maintained.</p> <p>e. Provide defile control.</p> <p>f. Provide security at crossing site, as directed.</p> <p>g. Operate holding areas, as required.</p> <p>h. Maintain communications with the crossing area commander.</p> <p>5. Teams conduct support operations on the exit bank.</p> <p>a. Prevent massing of vehicles.</p> <p>b. Operate a holding area inside the TRL to control movement.</p> <p>c. Use as many roads as possible to minimize congestion and clear the bank.</p> <p>d. Establish TCPs and mobile patrols to control traffic at critical road junctions.</p> <p>e. Operate a holding area outside the TRL to temporarily hold sections of a convoy or a unit until it can reassemble and continue its movement.</p> <p>f. Allow only authorized movements to take place.</p> <p>g. Conduct mobile patrols along primary routes to control traffic, enforce MSR regulations, spot problems, and reroute traffic when necessary.</p> <p>h. Perform straggler and dislocated civilian control operations.</p> <p>i. Operate temporary EPW collecting points outside the TRL.</p> <p>j. Evacuate EPW, dislocated civilians, and unauthorized persons from the crossing area.</p> <p>k. Provide security as required.</p> <p>* 6. Platoon leader updates higher headquarters on the status of the river crossing.</p> <p>a. Reorganizes the platoon.</p> <p>b. Plans for future operations.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4101	Process EPW/CI At A Collecting Point Or Holding Area
	191-376-4105	Operate A Traffic Control Post
	191-376-4106	Operate A Roadblock And A Checkpoint
	191-376-4109	Control Traffic At A Defile
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
	191-377-4202	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A TRAFFIC CONTROL POST
	191-377-4204	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DEFILE
	191-377-4205	SUPERVISE PROCESSING OF EPW/CI AT A COLLECTING POINT OR HOLDING AREA
	191-379-4401	DEVELOP A PLAN FOR MP SUPPORT OF RIVER CROSSING OPERATIONS
	191-379-4403	PLAN FOR DEFILES AND HOLDING AREAS
	191-379-4409	PLAN ESTABLISHMENT OF TRAFFIC CONTROL POST
	191-379-4412	PLAN STRAGGLER CONTROL OPERATIONS
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-332-5000	PREPARE AN OPERATION OVERLAY
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	191-377-5250	HANDLE ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1003)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Sustain minimum casualties. 8. Report actions to superiors.

**TASK: CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Provide MP Support to a Passage of Lines Operation (19-3-12004)  
(FM 19-4) (FM 7-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has been directed to escort a unit (either forward/rearward) through friendly elements en route to a release point or assembly area. Higher headquarters has established the route start point, time of passage, passage lane, and recognition signals. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon provides security and assists in the movement of all personnel and equipment of the passing unit through the stationary unit using movement techniques, TCPs, and mobile patrols. The passage is conducted at the time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO with no loss of personnel or vehicle to friendly fire by either the stationary or passing unit.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures for the passage of lines operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues a warning order.</li> <li>b. Analyzes the mission using METT-TC.</li> <li>c. Makes a tentative plan to include the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy and friendly situations.</li> <li>(2) Designation, type, and size of passing unit.</li> <li>(3) The route a relieving unit will take to passage start point.</li> <li>(4) Start time for the passage of lines.</li> <li>(5) Stationary unit's final position.</li> <li>(6) Battle handover line.</li> <li>(7) Passage points.</li> <li>(8) Passing lanes.</li> <li>(9) Contact points.</li> <li>(10) Checkpoints used to coordinate friendly movement.</li> <li>(11) Obstacle locations and types.</li> <li>(12) Presence of any NBC contamination.</li> <li>(13) Location of the stationary unit's command post.</li> <li>(14) Combat support/combat service support location for emergency situations.</li> <li>(15) Location of traffic control posts.</li> <li>(16) SOI information.</li> <li>(17) Assembly area for the passing unit.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Coordinates the designated recognition signal before arriving at the route start point.</li> <li>e. Conducts a leader's or map reconnaissance to identify needed control measures.</li> <li>f. Requests threat analysis from company headquarters.</li> <li>g. Completes the plan.</li> <li>h. Back-briefs higher headquarters on the plan.</li> <li>i. Issues orders to the platoon.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant supervise a rehearsal.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 3. Platoon sergeant coordinates support requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests needed class I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for medical support and medical evacuation.</li> <li>c. Conducts precombat inspection.</li> <li>d. Ensures communications are established.</li> </ul> <p>4. Squads/teams assist the movement of passing unit from route start point to release point or assembly area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use passage lane to avoid stationary units and obstacles.</li> <li>b. Depart the stationary force's position at the specified time.</li> <li>c. Conduct a reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>d. Perform temporary route signing.</li> <li>e. Establish TCPs.</li> <li>f. Provide mobile patrols to escort and guide vehicles.</li> <li>g. Maintain security to prevent infiltration.</li> <li>h. Establish the following special control measures as necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Defiles.</li> <li>(2) Checkpoints.</li> <li>(3) Roadblocks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>i. Accept EPW, stragglers, and dislocated civilians from passing units.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. Platoon leader updates higher headquarters on status of mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidates the platoon.</li> <li>b. Plans future operations.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4101	Process EPW/CI At A Collecting Point Or Holding Area
	191-376-4105	Operate A Traffic Control Post
	191-376-4106	Operate A Roadblock And A Checkpoint
	191-376-4108	Operate A Dismount Point
	STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	191-377-4200
191-377-4202		ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A ROADBLOCK/CHECKPOINT
191-377-4203		ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DEFILE SUPERVISE PROCESSING OF EPW/CI AT A COLLECTING POINT OR HOLDING AREA PLAN ROADBLOCKS AND CHECKPOINTS
191-377-4204		
191-377-4205		
191-379-4402		



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	191-379-4409	PLAN ESTABLISHMENT OF TRAFFIC CONTROL POST
	191-379-4412	PLAN STRAGGLER CONTROL OPERATIONS
	051-196-3065	PREPARE A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE OVERLAY
	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-326-5805	CONDUCT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE MISSION
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1003)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Sustain minimum casualties. 8. Report actions to superiors.

**TASK: CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

**TASK: ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

**STANDARD:** 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Response Force Operations (19-3-22001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has been designated as a response force. The maximum response time has been specified by higher headquarters. The platoon receives orders to respond to a situation involving hostile or disruptive elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon responds within the time specified and suppresses the hostile elements or contains them until relieved.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Analyzes the situation.</li> <li>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Considers available resources.</li> <li>e. Designates the ORP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Squads/teams conduct precombat inspection.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspect personnel.</li> <li>b. Inspect vehicles.</li> <li>c. Inspect weapons.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Response force moves to ORP within the specified time.</li> <li>* 4. Platoon leader provides updated situation reports to company headquarters or division provost marshal throughout the operation.</li> <li>* 5. Platoon leader develops the course of action.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Orders teams to reconnoiter the area and assess the situation.</li> <li>b. Tasks the remaining elements to provide overwatch/security.</li> <li>c. Determines if support is needed to resolve the situation.</li> <li>d. Establishes communications with threatened friendly forces and coordinates actions.</li> <li>e. Determines actions based on situation and guidance from higher headquarters.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Decides to maintain contact.</li> <li>(2) Decides to engage.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>6. Response force maintains contact.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continually develops information on the situation.</li> <li>b. Coordinates actions with other response forces.</li> <li>c. Isolates the situation.</li> <li>d. Avoids decisive engagement.</li> </ul> </li> <li>7. Response force engages the hostile or disruptive elements IAW the rules of engagement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Engages hostile or disruptive elements with appropriate level of force.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Uses overpowering force on armed combat forces to include available fire support. (2) Uses the minimal force necessary to control noncombat forces to include use of less than lethal means. b. Designates targets and controls fires. c. Continues to engage until the target is destroyed or suppressed. * 8. Platoon leader reconsolidates the platoon upon resolution of the situation. a. Directs the platoon to assemble at a secure rally point. b. Determines status of ammunition, casualties, and equipment. c. Reports status to company headquarters or division provost marshal and awaits further orders.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5605	CONTROL MOVEMENT OF A FIRE TEAM
	071-332-5021	PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY SITUATION MAP
	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### TASK: ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)

**CONDITION:** The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

**STANDARD:** 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service

support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Delay the Enemy (19-3-22007)  
(FM 19-4) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** US forces are not in contact with the enemy; however, an enemy attack is expected. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, or ground (mounted or dismounted). Higher headquarters orders the platoon to delay the enemy for a specific time. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon occupies its sector and delays the enemy for the time specified in the order. The platoon maintains its freedom to maneuver and does not become decisively engaged.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader begins troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtains graphics and overlays for the operation.</li> <li>b. Identifies initial and subsequent delay positions.</li> <li>c. Includes company phase line and graphics in the platoon overlay.</li> <li>d. Identifies general routes between delay position.</li> <li>e. Conducts an initial map reconnaissance for possible squad delay positions.</li> <li>f. Conducts map reconnaissance and marks general routes of egress between successive delay positions (primary and alternative).</li> <li>g. Prepares and issues warning order to platoon.</li> <li>h. Issues warning order to platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon sergeant checks on individual soldier requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures class I, III, V, and VIII are on-hand.</li> <li>b. Ensures a resupply rate is established with higher headquarters.</li> <li>c. Inspects soldiers' individual equipment for serviceability.</li> <li>d. Assists platoon leader in overseeing rehearsals.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon leader makes tentative plan..                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Plans for possible offensive operations.</li> <li>b. Incorporates the company fire support plan into the platoon plan.</li> <li>c. Plans evacuation routes.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for disengagement criteria.</li> <li>e. Coordinates for control measures to be used during the delay: phase lines, sector, or battle positions.</li> <li>f. Identifies rules of engagement and use of force criteria.</li> <li>g. Uses the commander's estimate of the situation to analyze METT-TC information, compare courses of action, and make a decision that produces the tentative plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Platoon leader directs movement towards the area of responsibility.</li> <li>* 5. Platoon sergeant moves the platoon to assembly areas prior to employing the control measures used during the delay.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures communications are established and maintained with all platoon elements and higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Ensures vehicle drivers maintain proper interval during march to positions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Ensures requested supplies are available.</li> <li>d. Conducts inspections of personnel and equipment.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Platoon leader and key leaders conduct a reconnaissance to complete the plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establish an initial screen line.</li> <li>b. Maintain continuous surveillance of key terrain under all visibility conditions.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Survey high-speed routes or avenues or approach into the sector 2 or 3 kilometers forward of the initial defensive positions.</li> <li>(2) Visually scan transfer release points.</li> <li>(3) Employ vehicle optics, binoculars, and night-vision devices as necessary.</li> <li>(4) Establish LPs/OPs.</li> <li>(5) Finalize platoon positions used during the delay.</li> <li>(6) Finalize dismounted and mounted avenues of approach.</li> <li>(7) Finalize kill zones and engagement areas.</li> <li>(8) Finalize covered and concealed approach routes.</li> <li>(9) Finalize egress routes to delay positions.</li> <li>(10) Back-brief the company commander on the plan.</li> <li>(11) Upon approval, issue the plan to the platoon using sketches or a terrain board during the briefing.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 7. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant supervise moving the platoon into delay positions while conducting rehearsals (depending on METT-TC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establish security outposts and patrols.</li> <li>b. Designate key weapons with predetermined engagement areas.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinate with units on the left and right.</li> <li>(2) Clear fields of fire and observation.</li> <li>(3) Ensure enemy armor approaches are covered with appropriate weapons.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Ensure fighting positions are employed to standard.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Check sectors of fire.</li> <li>(2) Check overhead cover and positions from the front.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Ensure communications are maintained to include FM, wire, and messenger.</li> <li>e. Designate ammunition resupply points and chow supply points.</li> <li>f. Emplace obstacles.</li> <li>g. Select supplementary and alternate positions used during the delay operation.</li> <li>h. Supervise rehearsals as platoon retrogrades through alternate positions to an established battle handover line.</li> </ul> <p>8. Squads/teams prepare to conduct the delay.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marks the route and positions.</li> <li>b. Conduct a reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Conduct a rehearsal to include movement to alternate or supplementary positions.</li> <li>d. Construct a series of fighting positions to fall back on.</li> <li>e. Prestock supplies, ammunition, and fuel in subsequent fighting positions.</li> <li>f. Construct a series of obstacles at critical choke points (for example, abatis).</li> <li>g. Evacuate unneeded personnel, supplies, and equipment according to orders.</li> <li>h. Destroy unneeded supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated.</li> </ul> <p>9. Platoon establishes engagement areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies when the enemy can be canalized.</li> <li>b. Identifies where the enemy is exposed to concentrated direct fire.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Identifies likely avenues of approach in their assigned team/squad sectors.</p> <p>10. Platoon employs obstacles within the engagement area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Covers all obstacles by direct fire or observation.</li> <li>b. Protects obstacles from breaching attempts.</li> <li>c. Seals the lanes through the obstacles prior to enemy arrival.</li> </ol> <p>11. Platoon establishes battle positions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Place battle positions along the base and flank of each engagement area.</li> <li>b. Places battle positions to concentrate direct fires within the engagement area.</li> </ol> <p>*12. Platoon leader briefs platoon on the method selected to disengage from the enemy--by thinning the lines, by fire teams, or by squads.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Thinning the lines: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Squad and team leader have the soldiers move rearward singly to where each takes a firing position to cover the move of others.</li> <li>(2) Squad and team leaders repeat the same rearward movement until into the next position.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Disengaging by fire teams: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) One fire team moves while the other fire team covers the withdrawal.</li> <li>(2) The identification of routes allows for the alternate roles with each move as each fire team moves to the rear to the next position.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Disengaging by squad: Each squad moves back, covered by the fire of the remaining squads.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: Platoon may use all three methods to disengage as enemy fire lessens. The platoon leader determines the appropriate method for the safety of the platoon while moving as quickly as possible to the next delaying position.</p> <p>13. Platoon/squad/team leaders determine appropriate technique to break contact with enemy elements: by bounds or by thinning the lines.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Bounds: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The unit divides into fire and movement elements.</li> <li>(2) The element least engaged by the enemy becomes the movement element.</li> <li>(3) The fire element engages the enemy by fire.</li> <li>(4) The movement element moves to an overwatch position to the rear and flank from which they can still fire on the enemy and overwatch the other element.</li> <li>(5) Once in place, the movement element becomes the fire element, On a given signal, the unit engaged disengages and moves to the rear and flank to an overwatch position. The maneuver is then repeated until contact is broken or the platoon leader orders a halt.</li> <li>(6) Element leaders stay with the subelement closest to the enemy in order to control when and where they move away from the enemy.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Thinning the line: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) If the squad/platoon is engaged by effective fire and cannot move by bounds, the thin the line technique is used.</li> <li>(2) On signal, the element in contact increases the fire, uses smoke or grenades, and moves to the rear to a position close enough to place effective fire on and beyond the old position.</li> <li>(3) The platoon sergeant and elements of the platoon move to the rear.</li> <li>(4) Platoon leaders and remaining elements stay with the forward elements.</li> <li>(5) Leaders in overwatch positions establish control over crew-served weapons.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>14. Platoon destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance elements or patrols forward of the initial defensive positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employs direct or indirect fires to destroy or repel the enemy.</li> <li>b. Moves into delaying positions.</li> <li>c. Withdraws LPs/OPs back to platoon positions (as determined by the platoon leader).</li> </ul> <p>15. Platoon conducts the delay IAW the OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Suppresses the enemy units with indirect fires.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Begins 3 to 4 kilometers forward of the initial defensive positions.</li> <li>(2) Slows down the enemy rate of advance.</li> <li>(3) Disrupts the enemy's tactical formation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Engages the enemy tactical formation.</li> <li>c. Masses available firepower within the engagement area.</li> <li>d. Moves to subsequent battle positions once the enemy has reached a certain designated distance from the platoon.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Engaged elements or squads disengage from the enemy.</li> <li>(2) Disengaged elements move to subsequent delay positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Provides fire support for disengaging platoons.</li> <li>f. Continues the delaying action until the unit reaches its final position or higher headquarters halts the mission.</li> <li>g. Maintains contact with the enemy.</li> <li>h. Covers maneuver elements with overwatching forces.</li> <li>i. Recovers or destroys disabled equipment.</li> <li>j. Evacuates wounded soldiers.</li> </ul> <p>*16. Platoon leader coordinates with higher headquarters for handover of the battle to a TCF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with higher headquarters for battle handover line.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for communication with the TCF.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with higher headquarters for follow-on assembly areas after handover of the battle to the TCF or for coming under the control of the TCF commander.</li> <li>d. Exchanges critical information with the TCF commander (SOI and so forth).</li> </ul> <p>*17. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant supervise the consolidation and reorganization of the platoon after the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Move to new defensive positions.</li> <li>b. Identify casualties and equipment losses.</li> <li>c. Update higher headquarters on platoon status.</li> <li>d. Prepare for future operations.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title	
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	071-326-0501	MOVE AS A MEMBER OF A FIRE TEAM	
	071-326-0608	USE VISUAL SIGNALING TECHNIQUES WHILE MOUNTED	
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER	
	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD	
	071-326-5832	PLAN A WITHDRAWAL UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE	
	071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)	
	071-410-0010	CONDUCT A LEADER'S RECONNAISSANCE	
	071-410-0019	CONTROL ORGANIC FIRES	
	071-420-0005	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A PLATOON	
	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD	
	STP 21-24-SMCT	061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE
		071-326-5630	CONDUCT MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES BY A PLATOON
071-329-1019		USE A MAP OVERLAY	
071-332-5021		PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY SITUATION MAP	
071-430-0002		CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A SQUAD	
071-430-0003		CONSOLIDATE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE	
071-430-0004		REORGANIZE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE	
071-430-0006		CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON	
071-430-0008		REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE	
091-309-0711		DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS	

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK:** MAINTAIN CONTACT (19-OPFOR-1011)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict maximum casualties.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Battle Handover to a Tactical Combat Force (19-3-22008)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The MP platoon conducting response force operations has become engaged with a Level III threat in the rear area. Higher headquarters has been notified and has instructed the platoon to handover the battle to a tactical combat force. Response force has become OPCON to the TCF. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon coordinates with the responding TCF. The handover is complete when the TCF is ready to engage the enemy.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader receives guidance to hand off the battle to TCF.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiates troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>b. Requests assistance through the MP company to the rear area operations center.</li> <li>c. Informs the base/base cluster or critical site commander that the TCF will assume the battle.</li> <li>d. Issues FRAGO to the response force to handover the battle to the TCF.</li> <li>e. Receives the following necessary guidance from the TCF:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Mission of units and scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(2) Presence of NBC contamination.</li> <li>(3) Fire support.</li> <li>(4) Enemy situation.</li> <li>(5) Friendly location.</li> <li>(6) OPs/LPs and patrol routes.</li> <li>(7) Obstacle locations and types.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. May receive the following optional guidance from the TCF:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Battle handover line or LD/LC.</li> <li>(2) Contact and coordination points.</li> <li>(3) Assembly area and attack positions.</li> <li>(4) Passage points and lanes.</li> <li>(5) SOI.</li> <li>(6) Recognition signals.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Platoon hands over the battle to the TCF.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses prearranged visual recognition signals to identify elements of the TCF.</li> <li>b. Provides guides to lead TCF elements along passage lanes.</li> <li>c. Keeps elements in overwatch to provide direct fire support for TCF elements as they move forward to the battle handover line.</li> <li>d. Withdraws along designated passage lanes upon command or release by the TCF commander.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Handover element provides the latest intelligence to the TCF as provided by the friendly units engaged with the enemy in the rear.</li> <li>* 4. Platoon leader reorganizes platoon upon withdrawal of the response force.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Redistributes ammunition.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Accounts for personnel. c. Accounts for equipment. d. Prepares necessary reports. e. Conducts tactical move to friendly area.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	071-326-0501	MOVE AS A MEMBER OF A FIRE TEAM
	071-326-0608	USE VISUAL SIGNALING TECHNIQUES WHILE MOUNTED
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD
	071-326-5832	PLAN A WITHDRAWAL UNDER ENEMY PRESSURE
	071-410-0019	CONTROL ORGANIC FIRES
STP 21-24-SMCT	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
	061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE
	071-326-5630	CONDUCT MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES BY A PLATOON
	071-332-5021	PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY SITUATION MAP
	071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)
	071-430-0002	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A SQUAD
	071-430-0003	CONSOLIDATE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0004	REORGANIZE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0006	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE	
091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS	
113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)	

## **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

### **TASK: ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

**STANDARD:** 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct a Movement to Contact (19-3-22009)  
(FM 19-4) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon conducts mounted and dismounted patrols as part of combat operations in support of rear operations. The mission is conducted day or night. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon conducts the movement to contact IAW the concept of the operation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader begins troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures mission is evaluated and understood.</li> <li>b. Ensures friendly and enemy situations are known and considered.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with higher headquarters for enemy information.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with higher headquarters on host-nation personnel along route or objective.</li> <li>e. Conducts a reconnaissance of the objective. At a minimum, conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>f. Organizes platoon for the mission.</li> <li>g. Issues a warning order to the platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon sergeant assists in the movement to contact and checking on the equipment and weapons required for the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verifies communications are established and maintained.</li> <li>b. Verifies command and signal instructions are clear and able to be understandable.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for class I, III, V, and VIII supplies.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for medical evacuation in the event of casualties.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon leader makes tentative plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests updated intelligence information on the objective and the enemy from higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with other units or headquarters as necessary.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with higher headquarters for fire support and tactical air support.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for the use of control measures (such as phase lines) to ensure command and control is kept and fratricide is prevented.</li> <li>e. Conduct eyes-on target, if possible, to finalize plan. Uses map reconnaissance if eyes-on not available.</li> <li>f. Writes plan.</li> <li>g. Directs preparation of terrain board for use during briefing.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Platoon sergeant begins preparation for initial movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures vehicles are fueled and PMCS are conducted prior to movement.</li> <li>b. Ensures weapons are functioning and soldiers have all equipment.</li> <li>c. Ensures night-vision devices are operating.</li> <li>d. Confirms communications within platoon and higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Assists the platoon leader in finalizing the order and preparing for the platoon briefing.</p> <p>* 5. Platoon leader completes the plan ensuring that detailed coordination takes place with all supporting agencies, higher headquarters, and units to the left, right, and rear.</p> <p>* 6. Platoon leader issues the order.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses a terrain board or sketches to assist in the briefing.</li> <li>b. Uses the five-paragraph OPORD during the briefing.</li> <li>c. Asks questions of the soldiers and leaders within the platoon to ensure the plan is understood.</li> <li>d. Establishes executive time and rehearsal requirements.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant conducts rehearsals and precombat checks.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspect for the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>(2) Uniforms and equipment.</li> <li>(3) Mission essential equipment (such as night-vision devices and communications equipment).</li> <li>(4) Rations and water.</li> <li>(5) Camouflage.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Supervise rehearsals to include the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Actions on the objective.</li> <li>(2) Battle drills for fire and movement.</li> <li>(3) Special teams (such as aid and litter and EPW teams).</li> <li>(4) Movement techniques.</li> <li>(5) Assembly areas and ORP operations.</li> <li>(6) Actions to be taken at danger areas.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>8. Squads/teams use mounted traveling movement technique when contact with the enemy is not expected.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Move as a unit.</li> <li>b. Move on a column axis, staggered laterally and keeping 50 to 100 meters between vehicles.</li> <li>c. Follow each other to keep unit integrity.</li> <li>d. Spread laterally when terrain permits.</li> <li>e. Use visual signals to control movement.</li> </ol> <p>9. Squads/teams use dismounted traveling movement technique when contact with the enemy is not expected.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Move as a unit using the wedge formation.</li> <li>b. Maintain normal space between soldiers ( about 10 meters). ( This may be less if visibility is poor. Terrain can also cause temporary change to wedge formation.)</li> <li>c. One team wedge follows about 10 meters behind another depending upon terrain and visibility, maintaining unit integrity.</li> <li>d. Uses visual signals to control movement.</li> </ol> <p>10. Squads/teams use mounted traveling overwatch technique when enemy contact is possible.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Lead elements use the most covered and concealed routes available.</li> <li>b. Main body teams move on a column axis 100 to 400 meters forward of the training element.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Trail elements move at variable speeds keeping up with and overwatching the movement of the lead element continuously. (The lead element reduces its speed if the trail element cannot keep up.)</p> <p>d. Teams control movement by visual signals.</p> <p>11. Squads/teams use dismounted traveling overwatch technique when enemy contact is possible.</p> <p>a. Teams move as a unit using wedge formation.</p> <p>b. Teams maintain normal space between soldiers (about 10 meters). ( This may be less if visibility is poor. Terrain can also cause temporary change to the wedge formation.)</p> <p>c. Lead element is 50 to 100 meters forward of the trailing elements.</p> <p>d. Trailing maneuver teams, maintaining unit integrity, space themselves 20 meters apart depending on terrain and visibility.</p> <p>e. Trailing maneuver teams move so they can also overwatch lead element continuously.</p> <p>f. Teams use signals to control movement.</p> <p>12. Squads/teams use the mounted or dismounted bounding overwatch movement technique when contact with the enemy is expected.</p> <p>a. Overwatch element covers movement of bounding element from concealed positions.</p> <p>b. Overwatch element selects positions that allow viewing of the area through which bounding element move.</p> <p>c. Overwatch element prepares to suppress likely enemy positions.</p> <p>d. Overwatch element prepares to maneuver to help the bounding element, if required.</p> <p>e. Bounding element, using terrain to conceal movement, moves to the next vantage position.</p> <p>f. Bounding element, using all available cover and concealment, occupies the vantage point and/or overwatch position.</p> <p>g. Bounding element, taking up overwatch positions, observes to front and flanks. Overwatch element moves to a forward position once bounding element is positioned.</p> <p>h. Teams use visual signals to control movement until contact is made.</p> <p>13. Squads/teams make contact with the enemy.</p> <p>a. Maintain orientation.</p> <p>b. Submit spot reports as required by SOP.</p> <p>c. Use proper movement techniques, terrain, and supporting fires to enhance combat power and gain contact with the smallest possible element.</p> <p>d. Reach the objective and gain contact with the enemy.</p> <p>(1) Attack and destroy.</p> <p>(2) Break contact.</p> <p>e. Report all information rapidly and accurately.</p> <p>*14. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant reorganize the platoon.</p> <p>a. Replace leaders and key weapon gunners.</p> <p>b. Redistribute ammunition.</p> <p>c. Ensure communications with higher headquarters is maintained.</p> <p>d. Report situation, position, and ammunition status to higher headquarters.</p> <p>e. Provide first aid and medical evacuation as necessary.</p> <p>*15. Platoon leader directs a change of mission as necessary.</p>		



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	051-191-2364	Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions
	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-326-5605	CONTROL MOVEMENT OF A FIRE TEAM
	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD
	071-410-0019	CONTROL ORGANIC FIRES
	071-420-0005	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A PLATOON
	071-430-0006	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON
STP 21-24-SMCT	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
	061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE
	071-326-3013	CONDUCT A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH
	071-430-0002	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A SQUAD
	071-430-0003	CONSOLIDATE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0004	REORGANIZE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	091-309-0710	SUPERVISE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES
	091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS
113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)	
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### TASK: ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)

**CONDITION:** The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

**STANDARD:** 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy

defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct a Deliberate Attack (19-3-22010)  
(FM 7-8) (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is conducting combat operations in support of rear operations. It has received a warning order or OPORD to take part in/conduct an attack. During the attack, the enemy engages the platoon with direct and indirect fire. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon conducts the attack IAW the concept expressed in the order. The platoon destroys the enemy force and seizes any assigned objectives.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures mission is evaluated and understood.</li> <li>b. Ensures friendly and enemy situations are considered.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with higher headquarters for enemy information.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with higher headquarters on host-nation personnel along route or objective.</li> <li>e. Conducts a reconnaissance of the objective. At a minimum, conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>f. Conducts analysis to ensure platoon begins the attack at the designated time.</li> <li>g. Organizes platoon for the mission.</li> <li>h. Issues platoon warning order.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon sergeant assists in preparing for the attack.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assists the platoon leader with the planning.</li> <li>b. Inspects the equipment and weapons required for the mission.</li> <li>c. Ensures communications are established and maintained.</li> <li>d. Ensures command and signal instructions are clear and able to be understood.</li> <li>e. Coordinates for class I, III, V, and VIII supplies.</li> <li>f. Coordinates for medical evacuation in the event of casualties.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon leader makes tentative plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests updated intelligence information on the objective and the enemy.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with other units or headquarters as necessary.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with higher headquarters for fire support and tactical air support.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for the use of control measures (such as phase lines) to ensure command and control is kept and fratricide is prevented.</li> <li>e. Conducts eyes-on target, if possible, to finalize plan. Uses map reconnaissance if eyes-on not available.</li> <li>f. Writes plan.</li> <li>g. Prepares sketch or terrain board for use during briefing.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Platoon sergeant begins preparation for initial movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures vehicles are fueled and PMCS are conducted prior to movement.</li> <li>b. Ensures weapons are functioning and soldiers have all equipment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Ensures night-vision devices are operating.</li> <li>d. Confirms communications with platoon and higher headquarters.</li> <li>e. Confirms the medical evacuation process in the event of casualties.</li> <li>f. Assists the platoon leader in finalizing the order and preparing for platoon briefing.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. Platoon leader completes the plan ensuring detailed coordination takes place with all supporting agencies, higher headquarters, and units to the left, right, and rear.</p> <p>* 6. Platoon leader issues the order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses a terrain board or sketches to assist in the briefing.</li> <li>b. Uses the five-paragraph OPORD during the briefing.</li> <li>c. Asks questions of the soldiers and leaders within the platoon to ensure the plan is understood.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant supervise rehearsals and conduct precombat checks.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspect the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>(2) Uniforms and equipment.</li> <li>(3) Mission essential equipment (such as night-vision devices and communications equipment).</li> <li>(4) Rations and water.</li> <li>(5) Camouflage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conduct rehearsals to include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Actions on the objective.</li> <li>(2) Battle drills for fire and movement.</li> <li>(3) Actions on enemy contact.</li> <li>(4) Special teams (such as aid and litter and EPW teams).</li> <li>(5) Movement techniques.</li> <li>(6) Assembly areas and ORP operations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>8. Platoon begins movement to objective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employs OPSEC measures during all stops.</li> <li>b. Defeats enemy intelligence gathering means throughout the operation.</li> <li>c. Uses proper movement techniques. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Traveling-contact is not expected.</li> <li>(2) Traveling overwatch-enemy contact is possible.</li> <li>(3) Bounding overwatch-enemy contact is expected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Crosses all danger areas in accordance with the unit tactical SOP.</li> <li>e. Attempts to make contact with the smallest element.</li> </ul> <p>9. Team leaders direct the platoon's response to indirect fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure teams continue to move out of incoming fire and seek cover and concealment from the enemy.</li> <li>b. Provide guidance on direction and distance to move.</li> <li>c. Ensure likely enemy observers are engaged with direct and indirect fire means.</li> <li>d. Submit spot reports using the SALUTE format through command channels to the higher headquarters intelligence/operations officer.</li> <li>e. Submit spot reports as soon as possible but no later than 30 minutes after the encounter.</li> <li>f. Send spot reports even if all information is not complete.</li> <li>g. Ensure encryption of spot reports conforms to unit and higher headquarters SOP and SOI.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Consolidate and reorganize.</p> <p>10. Platoon takes action on contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures overwatch element instantly returns fire to suppress or destroy the enemy.</li> <li>b. Ensures leading element immediately returns fire and moves to covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>c. Ensures lead element reports contact, enemy disposition, and friendly casualties.</li> <li>d. Ensures platoon deploys into position from which it can develop the situation.</li> <li>e. Ensures if the enemy strength and disposition is unclear, direct fire and movement is employed to decide the enemy strength, disposition, composition, and activity.</li> <li>f. Develops the situation to learn location of enemy flanks and supporting units and weapons.</li> <li>g. Ensures that if the platoon has sufficient power to destroy the enemy, reports that it intends to close with and destroy the enemy.</li> <li>h. Ensures that if the platoon does not have sufficient combat power to destroy the enemy, reports that it intends to maintain contact and request assistance or bypass enemy contact.</li> <li>i. Coordinates with higher headquarters on whether to continue with the deliberate attack or not.</li> <li>j. Reorganizes following enemy contact.</li> </ul> <p>11. Platoon conducts a reconnaissance of the ORP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stops one terrain feature away from objective to establish the ORP.</li> <li>b. Arranges ORP in a manner to ensure quick movement from the ORP upon completion of the mission.</li> <li>c. Establishes communications with the ORP elements during the leaders' reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Leaves security personnel behind with eyes on the objective as leaders return to the ORP.</li> </ul> <p>*12. Platoon leader and key leaders conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the objective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Review and change plan based on visual observation of the objective.</li> <li>b. Brief soldiers on any changes to the plan.</li> </ul> <p>13. Platoon ensures employment of direct fire weapons IAW the plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Distributes fires for complete target coverage.</li> <li>b. Destroys priority targets as briefed during the OPORD by the platoon leader.</li> <li>c. Engages armored vehicles from the flanks and rear when possible.</li> <li>d. Provides suppressive fires through the use of automatic weapons.</li> <li>e. Controls rate of fire.</li> </ul> <p>14. Platoon ensures employment of supporting fire ( if available).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Calls for and adjusts mortar and field artillery fire.</li> <li>b. Requests, controls, and/or adjusts air strikes.</li> <li>c. Ensures fires effectively obscures, suppresses, or destroys known or suspected enemy positions.</li> </ul> <p>*15. Platoon leader meets with security personnel left behind at overwatch position during leaders' reconnaissance to ensure the situation has not changed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>16. Squad/teams close with the enemy after leaving the ORP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure supporting elements engage the enemy with direct fire to destroy and suppress enemy vehicles and personnel.</li> <li>b. Ensure supporting elements adjust fires to suppress enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Take appropriate measures to ensure bounding/assaulting elements are not in their line of fire.</li> <li>d. Ensure bounding/assaulting elements move at the greatest speed on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>e. Ensure bounding/assaulting elements fire on the move, as needed, to suppress or destroy the enemy.</li> <li>f. Ensure bounding/assaulting elements occupy covered and concealed firing positions and engage the enemy with direct fire.</li> <li>g. Ensure the initial supporting element bounds to join the new overwatch element.</li> <li>h. Ensure signals (primary alternate) are given when supporting fires are to be shifted to most likely enemy avenue of withdrawal.</li> </ul> <p>17. Platoon takes actions on the objective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employs direct fire weapons to suppress the enemy.</li> <li>b. Conducts fire and maneuver.</li> <li>c. Ensures assault element moves onto the position and directs fires from the supporting element to the flanks and rear of the objective.</li> <li>d. Ensures assault element moves rapidly onto the position, preferably attacking from the flanks and rear.</li> <li>e. Ensures assaulting element fires on the move as necessary.</li> <li>f. Drops off special teams as they cross the objective (for example, aid and litter, EPW, and intelligence teams.)</li> <li>g. Limits the advance of the assaulting element to no further than the limit of advance established during the OPORD briefing.</li> <li>h. Destroys, captures, or forces the enemy to withdraw.</li> </ul> <p>*18. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant consolidate the platoon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure soldiers assume covered and concealed fighting positions that provide for observation and fire on enemy positions and avenues of approach.</li> <li>b. Direct a reconnaissance of the area to ensure no enemy soldiers are present.</li> <li>c. Direct a reconnaissance to remove mines, booby traps, and obstacles on the position.</li> <li>d. Ensure items of intelligence value are collected, safeguarded, and transported as the tactical situation permits.</li> <li>e. Ensure position is secured and defended.</li> </ul> <p>*19. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant reorganize the platoon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Replace key personnel and key weapon gunners.</li> <li>b. Redistribute ammunition.</li> <li>c. Direct casualties be moved to covered positions and arrange for medical aid and evacuation.</li> <li>d. Ensure situation, positions, casualties incurred, and ammunition status are reported.</li> <li>e. Direct the processing of EPW.</li> <li>f. Direct displaced civilians out of the area.</li> <li>g. Update higher headquarters on the status of the mission.</li> <li>h. Plan for future operations.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	051-191-2364	Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions
	051-196-2019	CONDUCT AND REPORT A HASTY ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE
	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-326-5605	CONTROL MOVEMENT OF A FIRE TEAM
	071-410-0010	CONDUCT A LEADER'S RECONNAISSANCE
	191-376-4101	Process EPW/CI At A Collecting Point Or Holding Area
STP 21-1-SMCT	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
	071-311-2007	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M16A1 OR M16A2 RIFLE
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-312-3031	ENGAGE TARGETS WITH AN M60 MACHINE GUN
	071-326-0502	MOVE UNDER DIRECT FIRE
	061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE
	071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN
	071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)
	071-430-0003	CONSOLIDATE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0004	REORGANIZE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	091-309-0710	SUPERVISE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES
	091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS
	093-403-5020	TAKE IMMEDIATE ACTION BASED ON CONFIRMATION OF AN EXPLOSIVE HAZARD
	093-403-5030	REPORT EXPLOSIVE HAZARD
113-573-0002	CONDUCT OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) PROCEDURES	
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	
191-377-5250	HANDLE ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT	

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**



**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct a Hasty Attack (19-3-22011)  
(FM 7-8) (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Enemy forces have been sighted in the MP platoon's area of operations. Size and strength of the enemy is known to be squad size, reinforced. The MP commander has issued the platoon leader a verbal attack order. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon conducts the attack, destroys or captures the enemy force, and reorganizes upon completing the attack.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assesses the situation considering METT-TC:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Current and future missions.</li> <li>(2) Friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>(3) Terrain and weather features.</li> <li>(4) Troops available.</li> <li>(5) Time available.</li> <li>(6) Any civilian considerations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Formulates an attack plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Devises a scheme of maneuver based on available intelligence regarding the enemy.</li> <li>(2) Requests air support from higher headquarters, if available.</li> <li>(3) Conducts a hasty map reconnaissance.</li> <li>(4) Coordinates with other units and headquarters, as necessary and as time permits.</li> <li>(5) Issues verbal orders.</li> <li>(6) Ensures normal chain of command supervises the operation and final preparations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Implements the following control measures to be used for the attack:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assembly areas, if required.</li> <li>(2) Attack positions.</li> <li>(3) Direction of attack.</li> <li>(4) Advance limits and flank boundaries.</li> <li>(5) Route.</li> <li>(6) Phase lines to include fire coordination line.</li> <li>(7) Checkpoints and rally points.</li> <li>(8) Fire control measures to include visual signals and pyrotechnics.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Places control measures on easily identifiable terrain features.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon sergeant assists platoon leader in hasty planning preparations and moving platoon to proper attack positions.</p> <p>3. Platoon elements rendezvous at the hasty assembly area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintain all-around security during movement and at the assembly area.</li> <li>b. Use covered and concealed routes during movement.</li> <li>c. Maintain light and noise discipline.</li> <li>d. Use equipment and personal camouflage.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Maintain communications security.</p> <p>4. Platoon moves to contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Leaves wounded or non-mission capable personnel to guard the assembly area or secure equipment and vehicles not used on the mission.</li> <li>b. Uses overwatch element (traveling or bounding overwatch) to provide security for the movement.</li> <li>c. Opens fire to suppress or destroy enemy upon contact.</li> <li>d. Moves to covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>e. Lead element reports contact, enemy strength, enemy disposition, and friendly casualties to the platoon leader.</li> <li>f. Develops situation to learn location of enemy flanks and supporting units and weapons.</li> <li>g. Reports intention to close with and destroy the enemy, if platoon has sufficient power.</li> </ul> <p>5. Platoon closes with the enemy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses all available fires to suppress or destroy the enemy vehicles and positions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Destroys priority targets first.</li> <li>(2) Uses automatic weapons to provide suppressive fire.</li> <li>(3) Calls for and adjusts mortar/field artillery indirect fire.</li> <li>(4) Requests, controls, and/or adjusts air strikes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Uses bounding overwatch to close in the enemy position.</li> <li>c. Conducts fire and maneuver to destroy, capture, or force the enemy to withdraw.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant consolidate and reorganize the platoon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Replace leaders and key weapons gunners.</li> <li>b. Redistribute ammunition.</li> <li>c. Move casualties to covered positions and arrange medical aid and evacuation.</li> <li>d. Secure and evacuate EPWs.</li> <li>e. Ensure communications with higher headquarters is maintained.</li> <li>f. Report situation, position, casualties incurred, and ammunition status to higher headquarters.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	113-587-2070	OPERATE SECURE SINCGARS SINGLE CHANNEL (SC)
	113-587-2071	OPERATE SECURE SINCGARS FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) (NET MEMBERS)

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5605	CONTROL MOVEMENT OF A FIRE TEAM
	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD
	071-332-5021	PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY SITUATION MAP
	071-410-0019	CONTROL ORGANIC FIRES
	071-420-0005	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A PLATOON
	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
STP 21-1-SMCT	051-191-1501	Perform Individual Camouflage
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD
	061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE
	071-326-3013	CONDUCT A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH
	071-430-0002	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A SQUAD
	071-430-0003	CONSOLIDATE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0004	REORGANIZE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0006	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS
191-377-5250	HANDLE ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT	

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK:** ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)

**CONDITION:** The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

**STANDARD:** 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct a Screen (19-3-22012)  
(FM 17-95) (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The MP platoon has been placed under operational control to a tactical combat force and has been ordered to conduct a screen of its flank during movement. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon conducts the screen providing early warning to the supported tactical combat force in their assigned sectors.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader begins troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures mission is evaluated and understood.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for information concerning friendly and enemy situations.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with higher headquarters on host-nation security personnel in the area of operations.</li> <li>d. Conducts reverse planning.</li> <li>e. Conducts analysis considering METT-TC and OCOKA.</li> <li>f. Issues platoon warning order.</li> <li>g. Organizes platoon for the mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon sergeant assists in the movement to contact and in checking on the equipment and weapons required for the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures communications are established and maintained.</li> <li>b. Ensures command and signal instructions are clear and able to be understood.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for class I, III, V, and VIII supplies.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for medical evacuation in the event of casualties.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon leader makes tentative plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests updated intelligence information on the objective and the enemy.</li> <li>b. Conducts a reconnaissance of the objective. At a minimum, conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with other units or headquarters as necessary.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with higher headquarters for fire support and tactical air support.</li> <li>e. Coordinates for the use of control measures (for example, phase lines) to ensure command and control is kept and fratricide is prevented.</li> <li>f. Writes plan.</li> <li>g. Directs preparation of sketch or terrain board for use during briefing.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Platoon sergeant begins preparation for initial movement by verifying pre-combat checks.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verifies vehicles are fueled and PMCS are conducted prior to movement.</li> <li>b. Ensures soldiers have all equipment.</li> <li>c. Verifies weapons are functioning.</li> <li>d. Verifies night-vision devices are operating with extra batteries.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Confirms communications within platoon and higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Confirms the medical evacuation process in the event of casualties.</li> <li>g. Assists the platoon leader in finalizing the order and preparing for the platoon briefing.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. Squad leader ensures the vehicles are fueled.</p> <p>* 6. Platoon sergeant verifies that squad leader has done precombat checks.</p> <p>* 7. Platoon leader completes the plan ensuring detailed coordination takes place with all supporting agencies, higher headquarters, and units to the left, right, and rear.</p> <p>* 8. Platoon leader issues the orders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses a terrain board or sketches to assist in the briefing.</li> <li>b. Uses the five-paragraph OPORD during the briefing.</li> <li>c. Asks questions of the soldiers and leaders within the platoon to ensure the plan is understood.</li> </ul> <p>* 9. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant conduct rehearsals and precombat inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspect the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>(2) Uniforms and equipment.</li> <li>(3) Mission essential equipment (such as night-vision devices and communications equipment).</li> <li>(4) Rations and water.</li> <li>(5) Camouflage.</li> <li>(6) Vehicles and fuel.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conduct rehearsals to include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Actions on the objective.</li> <li>(2) Battle drills for fire and movement.</li> <li>(3) Appropriate movement techniques based on terrain, visibility, and probability of enemy contact.</li> <li>(4) Assembly areas and ORP operations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>10. Squads/teams screen the flank of the moving force.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Move to initial screen line, employing appropriate techniques of movement.</li> <li>b. Establish OPs for surveillance of the area forward of the screen line.</li> <li>c. Conduct patrols ( mounted and dismounted) between OPs and in areas that cannot be observed.</li> <li>d. Move to keep pace with the main body by moving elements (OPs) from rear to front or by displacing all OPs simultaneously.</li> <li>e. Detect and report all enemy elements in the sector.</li> <li>f. Request and adjust supporting fire to delay and force the deployment of enemy elements.</li> <li>g. Maintain continuity of screen and prevent the enemy from reaching the main body undetected.</li> <li>h. Destroy enemy reconnaissance.</li> <li>i. Continue engagement of the enemy with indirect supporting fires. All squads conduct initial and subsequent bounds simultaneously. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) OPs simultaneously withdraw to the subsequent line, or</li> <li>(2) Conduct bounding overwatch with squads displacing to the subsequent screen line, or</li> <li>(3) Conduct bounding overwatch internally.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>11. Squads/teams conduct surveillance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintain observation of all terrain forward of the screen line. Visually scan key terrain, avenues of approach, and target reference points.</li> <li>b. Employs OPs/LPs and night-vision devices as necessary to maintain observation and surveillance.</li> <li>c. Conduct mounted and dismounted patrols between OPs on an irregular schedule.</li> <li>d. Detect and report all enemy elements in the area.</li> <li>e. Request and adjust supporting fires on observed enemy elements, on order.</li> </ol> <p>12. Squads/teams react to indirect fire.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moving squads continue to move out of the impact area and occupy covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>b. Suppressed stationary guards move out of the impact area to alternate positions.</li> <li>c. Soldiers don protective masks, if necessary.</li> <li>d. Teams submit shelling, mortar, and bombing report.</li> <li>e. Soldiers remain in MOPP 1 and check for contamination when out of the impact area.</li> </ol> <p>13. Squads/teams employ supporting fires.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Request and adjust fire.</li> <li>b. Identify and report suspected enemy positions as potential priority targets when moving out of contact.</li> <li>c. Request immediate suppression on enemy elements engaging the platoon.</li> <li>d. Request smoke to screen MP movement across open areas when contact is expected or possible.</li> <li>e. Request suppressive fires on enemy elements and likely overwatch positions when contact is made.</li> <li>f. Request smoke to separate enemy elements and obscure likely overwatch positions.</li> </ol> <p>14. Squads/teams disengage.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employ intense supporting smoke and fire to suppress and obscure the enemy.</li> <li>b. Leave a team in contact to continue engagement of the enemy or using fire and maneuver move the remainder of the MP squad to the predesignated location.</li> <li>c. Team in contact secures the rear of the MP squad and disengages using the bounding overwatch until contact is broken. Team then rejoins the squad, which rapidly moves to another location.</li> </ol> <p>*15. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant reorganize the platoon.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Replace leaders and key weapons gunners.</li> <li>b. Redistribute ammunition.</li> <li>c. Ensure communications with higher headquarters is maintained.</li> <li>d. Report situation, position, and ammunition status to higher headquarters.</li> <li>e. Give change of mission to platoon.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	071-331-0002	CONDUCT A LOCAL SECURITY PATROL
	071-331-1000	PREPARE THE PLATOON EARLY WARNING SYSTEM AN/TRS-2 FOR OPERATION
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	051-191-2364	Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions
	061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE
	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-410-0019	CONTROL ORGANIC FIRES
	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1004	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/ CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M17-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	071-326-0510	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE WHILE DISMOUNTED
	071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
	031-503-3005	PREPARE AND SUBMIT NBC 1 REPORTS
STP 21-24-SMCT	061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE
	071-326-5630	CONDUCT MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES BY A PLATOON
	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST
	071-430-0003	CONSOLIDATE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0004	REORGANIZE A SQUAD FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	091-309-0710	SUPERVISE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES
	091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS
113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)	
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	

## **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

### **TASK: MAINTAIN CONTACT (19-OPFOR-1011)**

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict maximum casualties.



**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Occupy A Site (19-3-60003)  
(FM 100-5) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An MP unit is moving to a new location. The quartering party has arrived at the new site in advance of the main party. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit HQ is secure and established at the new site. Communications with the company and with subordinate and supporting elements are maintained without interruption.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Quartering party establishes the site.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumes appropriate MOPP level prior to sweeping the site.</li> <li>b. Sweeps the site for threat forces, NBC contamination, and other hazards.</li> <li>c. Establishes dismount point and perimeter security.</li> <li>d. Establishes communications.</li> <li>e. Identifies locations for each staff section.</li> <li>f. Improves and marks entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>g. Positions guides at RP to meet main party.</li> <li>h. Notifies convoy commander when site is prepared for arrival of main party.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Main party moves into new site.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves into identified positions according to staff section, as directed by quartering party guides.</li> <li>b. Maintains vehicle interval.</li> <li>c. Maintains security as main party moves into site.</li> <li>d. Maintains noise and light discipline.</li> <li>e. Dismounts all persons except drivers at the dismount point.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. Commander improves security of site.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigns main party personnel to security roles as staff sections are established.</li> <li>b. Identifies locations for and assigns soldiers to individual fighting positions.</li> <li>c. Ensures unit personnel prepare range cards and sector sketches.</li> <li>d. Establishes LPs and OPs.</li> <li>e. Ensures unit personnel camouflage vehicles and equipment.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 19-95B1-SM	071-326-0501	MOVE AS A MEMBER OF A FIRE TEAM
	191-376-4108	Operate A Dismount Point
STP 19-95B23-SM-TG	051-191-2364	Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions
	051-192-3032	DIRECT INSTALLATION/REMOVAL OF A HASTY PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD
	071-331-1003	INSTALLATION PLANNING AND INSTALLATION OF A PLATOON EARLY WARNING SYSTEM AN/TRS-2
	191-377-4201	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DISMOUNT POINT
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Defend Unit Position (7-3-C212)  
(FM 7-8) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-70)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is occupying prepared defensive positions. Intelligence reports indicate small OPFOR elements have been sighted in the operational area. OPFOR patrols have increased in sector. The OPFOR attacks the platoon. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Main defensive positions are not surprised by OPFOR. The platoon denies enemy penetration of the defensive positions and engages attacking units forcing enemy withdrawal. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Observation posts detect and correctly identify enemy.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Report enemy activity before main body is engaged.</li> <li>b. Report using SALUTE format.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Unit personnel are alerted and occupy fighting positions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Actuate alert plan IAW with unit SOP.</li> <li>b. Occupy fighting positions within 1 minute of initial warning.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Unit personnel report enemy contact.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Report enemy contact using SALUTE format to company HQ within 1 minute of contact.</li> <li>b. Render additional situation reports as situation changes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Observation posts return to unit's position.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use covered and concealed routes back to defensive position.</li> <li>b. Do not become decisively engaged.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Unit personnel request indirect fire and or close air support is requested if available and applicable.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiate call for fire procedure within 1 minute of target acquisition.</li> <li>b. Adjust fire within 30 seconds of round impact.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The platoon reacts to enemy.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Execute obstacle plan IAW the OPORD/FRAGO [for example, detonate demolitions, detonate Claymore mines on order, or trigger line].</li> <li>b. Fire organic weapons as enemy comes into range or as ordered to do so.</li> <li>c. Control distribution and rate of fire to ensure a continuous volume of effective fire is placed on the enemy.</li> <li>d. Reposition vehicles, squads, and individuals to alternate and supplementary positions using covered and concealed routes, as needed.</li> <li>e. Initiate final protective fires, if required.</li> <li>f. Direct counterattacks of reserves to eject enemy penetrations, if required.</li> <li>g. Defend until enemy is repelled or receives orders to disengage from higher headquarters.</li> <li>h. Sustain no friendly casualties due to friendly fire.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. The platoon reacts to indirect fire.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Initiate alert by any member yelling, "Incoming." Also, alert subordinate elements by other communications means available.</p> <p>b. Seek protection under the overhead cover of fighting positions. If in open, personnel move to fighting position or out of area.</p> <p>c. Move vehicles out of impact area to alternate positions if applicable.</p> <p>* 8. Leaders reorganize the platoon.</p> <p>a. Reestablish unit chain of command.</p> <p>b. Submit situation report to company commander.</p> <p>c. Cross-level the unit to fill critical positions caused by casualties.</p> <p>d. Redistribute ammunition.</p> <p>e. Reoccupy OPs, key weapons, and positions immediately.</p> <p>f. Treat and evacuate casualties as necessary. (All first-aid common tasks should be reviewed.)</p> <p>g. Submit casualty reports.</p> <p>h. Update personnel roster.</p> <p>i. Process EPW/captured materials.</p> <p>* 9. Leaders consolidate platoon.</p> <p>a. Reposition OPs.</p> <p>b. Reestablish communication with elements.</p> <p>c. Reposition personnel.</p> <p>d. Reassign sectors of fire to cover all gaps.</p> <p>e. Implement sleep/alert plan.</p> <p>10. Unit continues mission.</p> <p>a. Continues as soon as tactical situation permits.</p> <p>b. Continues on orders from company commander.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	061-283-6003	ADJUST INDIRECT FIRE
	071-430-0002	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A SQUAD
	071-430-0006	CONDUCT A DEFENSE BY A PLATOON
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING
		ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING
	ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE	
121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES	

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:



**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Perform a Tactical Road March (7-3-C227)  
(FM 7-8) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-70)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The enemy (no larger than a squad/platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted, employ indirect fires, or employ air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the start point, follows the prescribed route without deviation unless required otherwise by enemy action or direction of higher headquarters, and crosses the release point, all as specified in the order. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leader issues a warning order to subordinate leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Includes enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission.</li> <li>b. Gives warning order immediately after being alerted for the mission.</li> <li>c. Includes movement instructions if movement is to be initiated before OPORD is issued.</li> <li>d. Addresses items not covered in unit SOP.</li> <li>e. States location and time to issue OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The leader completes the plan and issues the march order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provides a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions.</li> <li>b. Identifies the route, start point, release point, critical points, and other control measures.</li> <li>c. Provides the organization for the movement, order of march, march rate, and distance to maintain between units.</li> <li>d. Provides for security tasks to subordinate elements to include all-around security and air guard coverage for the entire element.</li> <li>e. Addresses contingencies for actions on enemy contact.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Plans must include reaction to enemy ambush, indirect fire, air attack, NBC attack, and sniper fires.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Provides soldier load guides.</li> <li>g. Back-briefs plans of subordinate leaders.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conducts necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special issue items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspects personnel and vehicles for the proper load, equipment, and readiness to move.</li> <li>b. Completes a communications check and report readiness to move.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crosses the start point at the designated time.</li> <li>b. Maintains personnel and vehicle intervals and rate of march specified in the order or unit SOP.</li> <li>c. Follows the prescribed route.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains all-around observation at all times to include air guards.</li> <li>b. Orients as directed to establish unit local security.</li> </ul> 6. Unit reports and reacts to enemy contact. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reports and react IAW directions in OPORD.</li> <li>b. Reports and react IAW unit SOP.</li> </ul> 7. Unit halts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Halts at regular intervals IAW unit SOP (as the tactical situation permits) to rest troops, adjust and redistribute equipment, and perform foot hygiene.</li> <li>b. Positions element to provide all-around security.</li> <li>c. Reports all halts to next higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Positions vehicles in a herringbone formation.</li> <li>e. Dismounts personnel to provide local security.</li> <li>f. Checks condition of personnel and equipment.</li> <li>g. Coordinates with adjacent unit.</li> <li>h. Reports status to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> 8. The leader controls the unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses visual, messenger, or radio signals for control throughout the movement.</li> <li>b. Reports control measures as directed by the SOP or the order.</li> <li>c. Uses or modifies control measures from the order, as needed.</li> </ul> 9. The element arrives at the release point at the time specified in the order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Meets the quartering party guide (if designated).</li> <li>b. Passes through the release point without halting.</li> <li>c. Reports crossing to higher headquarters.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-326-0510	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE WHILE DISMOUNTED
	071-329-1000	IDENTIFY TOPOGRAPHIC SYMBOLS ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP
	071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP
	071-329-1003	DETERMINE A MAGNETIC AZIMUTH USING A LENSATIC COMPASS
	071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION
	071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

**References**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-329-1012	ORIENT A MAP TO THE GROUND BY MAP TERRAIN ASSOCIATION
071-329-1018	DETERMINE DIRECTION WITHOUT A COMPASS

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**



**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP PLATOON/SQUAD  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209)  
 (FM 3-50) (FM 3-50-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The threat impedes direct platoon observation by using smoke as an obscuring measure, or the platoon needs to conceal its activities from threat observation. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon exploits the threat of smoke or employs organic smoke to conceal the platoon's own activities and continues the mission. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Platoon does not allow the threat smoke to impede performance of mission.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performs its mission in the presence of threat smoke.</li> <li>b. Uses threat smoke to conceal their own movements.</li> <li>c. Moves to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat's use of smoke.</li> <li>d. Considers using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The platoon employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates smoke operations with unit commander or supported unit.</li> <li>b. Determines wind direction and speed.</li> <li>c. Determines where to release smoke and where it will travel.</li> <li>d. Determines duration of smoke operations.</li> <li>e. Determines the effects of weather conditions of their smoke plan.</li> <li>f. Ensures that smoke covers a larger area than the platoon position.</li> <li>g. Requests smoke support from the supported unit (if organic systems will not accomplish the task).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The platoon uses target acquisition and guidance systems.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines what available target and acquisition systems are effective in smoke.</li> <li>b. Requests target acquisition and guidance systems are effective in smoke.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. Platoon sergeant requests resupply of smoke munitions when required.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> <li>b. Distributes smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Route Regulation Enforcement (19-3-12002)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The commander has directed the MP platoon to direct traffic and enforce route regulations on all routes within its area of responsibility. The highway regulation and traffic circulation plans have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon enforces route regulations IAW the command's highway and traffic circulation plan. It also establishes the control measures needed to control traffic.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines personnel and equipment requirements.</li> <li>b. Conducts map reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>c. Selects personnel.</li> <li>d. Issues warning order.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon leader makes a tentative plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Plans employment of personnel.</li> <li>b. Sends teams to reconnoiter routes.</li> <li>c. Recommends location for TCPs and holding areas to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Selects locations for temporary route signs.</li> <li>e. Identifies potential problem areas along routes.</li> <li>f. Determines patrol requirements.</li> <li>g. Determines emergency courses of action.</li> <li>h. Analyzes existing traffic and road conditions.</li> <li>i. Considers enemy and weather.</li> <li>j. Briefs participating personnel.</li> <li>k. Briefs company commander.</li> <li>l. Issues oral operations order.</li> <li>m. Issues orders.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon sergeant coordinates for support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for class I, III, V, and VIII supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinates logistical support for regulatory signs and signal requirements.</li> <li>c. Ensures communications are established.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for medical support and evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Platoon leader spot checks and platoon sergeant inspects mission essential equipment such as the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>b. Uniforms.</li> <li>c. Equipment (including night-vision equipment).</li> <li>d. Communications.</li> <li>e. Rations and water.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant supervise rehearsals, if time permits.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervise use of control measures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Supervise actions on contact.</li> <li>c. Supervise encounters with dislocated civilians.</li> <li>d. Supervise encounters with media personnel.</li> <li>e. Supervise encounters with stragglers.</li> <li>f. Supervise handling of EPW.</li> </ul> <p>6. Teams place temporary signs where hazards exist or where traffic must be regulated ( See Task 13-3-12003, Conduct Temporary Route Signing).</p> <p>7. Teams operate TCPs IAW the traffic control plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Place TCPs as determined by platoon leader.</li> <li>b. Verify movement credits.</li> <li>c. Deny access unauthorized users.</li> <li>d. Provide information to authorized persons.</li> <li>e. Submit passing reports as required by the movement control agency.</li> </ul> <p>8. Teams establish a holding area IAW the traffic control plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provide security and defend the position.</li> <li>b. Ensure vehicles can disperse if the tactical situation demands.</li> <li>c. Ensures access to and from the roadway.</li> <li>d. Ensures surface is large enough to allow vehicles to be covered and concealed from the air and ground.</li> <li>e. Ensures surface area is firm enough to hold vehicles.</li> </ul> <p>9. Teams set up roadblocks along selected primary routes, key locations, alternate routes, and secondary positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select the security position and provide security.</li> <li>b. Place roadblocks so traffic cannot avoid the roadblock.</li> <li>c. Provide communications.</li> <li>d. Stop traffic and direct where traffic may or may not proceed.</li> </ul> <p>10. Teams operate static checkpoints on both temporary and 24-hour basis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforce rules and regulation. Prevent illegal actions that may aid the enemy.</li> <li>b. Search vehicles for unauthorized cargo, check cargo documentation for authenticity, and seize any unauthorized cargo.</li> <li>c. Check convoy vehicles on controlled routes for movement credits issued by the Highway Traffic Headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>11. Teams operate a defile when a natural or man-made obstacle restricts traffic flow.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provide security and defend the position.</li> <li>b. Brief drivers about obstructions.</li> <li>c. Control access to the defile so that vehicles move through quickly.</li> <li>d. Ensure vehicles enter defile one at a time.</li> <li>e. Reroute traffic when necessary.</li> </ul> <p>12. Teams enforce host-nation curfews and emergency restrictions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforce curfews.</li> <li>b. Screen pedestrians by checking government issued identification cards and travel passes.</li> <li>c. Apprehend insurgents and other authorized persons.</li> <li>d. Direct dislocated civilians to collecting points.</li> </ul> <p>13. Teams conduct mobile patrols of the routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitor traffic and assist authorized users of the routes.</li> <li>b. Identify, report, and counter enemy activity.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Collect reports from TCPs and forward to platoon headquarters. 14. Teams collect and report information. a. Collect. b. Report PIR and CCIR. c. Collect information from HUMINT sources. d. Collect information about enemy activity from dislocated civilians. e. Transmit information of immediate intelligence value via wire or radio communications. f. Report information not of immediate value as part of the patrol report. *15. Platoon leader processes reports. a. Consolidates teams' reports. b. Submits report to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4106	Operate A Roadblock And A Checkpoint
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-329-1019	USE A MAP OVERLAY
	071-332-5050	MONITOR OPERATIONS/MOVEMENTS OF SUBORDINATE UNITS
	071-410-0010	CONDUCT A LEADER'S RECONNAISSANCE
	191-377-4202	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A TRAFFIC CONTROL POST
	191-377-4203	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A ROADBLOCK/CHECKPOINT
	191-377-4204	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DEFILE
STP 21-1-SMCT	191-379-4402	PLAN ROADBLOCKS AND CHECKPOINTS
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 21-24-SMCT	051-196-3065	PREPARE A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE OVERLAY
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1003)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the

designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Sustain minimum casualties. 8. Report actions to superiors.

**TASK:** CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

**TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1005)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular, and/or irregular elements in the enemy rear area along main supply routes and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** 1. Set up well-concealed locations. 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected targets. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being detected. 6. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Perform Temporary Route Signing (19-3-12003)  
(FM 5-36) (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The commander has directed the MP platoon to conduct route signing in its area of responsibility. Highway Regulation and Traffic Circulation Plans have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon conducts temporary signing in its area of responsibility IAW the Highway Regulation and Traffic Circulation Plans.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzes the temporary route-signing mission.</li> <li>b. Determines personnel and equipment requirements.</li> <li>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance of the routes to be signed.</li> <li>d. Selects personnel.</li> <li>e. Issues the warning order.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon leader makes a tentative plan considering the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Types of signs needed to include axial and lateral route signs, link-route signs, headquarters and installation signs, and directional signs.</li> <li>b. Replacement of signs.</li> <li>c. Sign design and minimum size requirements.</li> <li>d. Use of hasty or preplanned signs.</li> <li>e. Patrol distribution.</li> <li>f. Considers the situation based on METT-TC.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon leader develops the plan to monitor emplacement of the signs.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefs the company commander.</li> <li>b. Issues orders to the squad/teams</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Platoon sergeant coordinates support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests materials for hasty route signs.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for engineer support for preplanned signs.</li> <li>c. Requests needed class I, III, V, and VIII supplies.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for medical evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. Platoon leader spot checks and platoon sergeant inspects mission-essential equipment to include the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>b. Uniforms.</li> <li>c. Equipment.</li> <li>d. Communications.</li> <li>e. Rations and water.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant supervise rehearsal, if time permits.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervise action during placement of signs.</li> <li>b. Supervise actions on contact.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Supervise encounters with dislocated civilians.</li> <li>d. Supervise encounters with the media.</li> <li>e. Supervise handling of stragglers.</li> <li>f. Supervise handling of EPWs.</li> </ul> <p>7. Teams place temporary signs where hazards exist or where traffic must be regulated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use signs to mark detours or locations of key units and facilities as well as to identify routes, provide distances, and general information.</li> <li>b. Place all signs on the side of the road facing the flow of traffic, .6 meters off the traveled way, and 1 to 2 meters above the level of the road.</li> <li>c. Place hazard signs 150 meters before the hazard.</li> <li>d. Place regulatory signs exactly where the regulation becomes effective and establish the rules of the road.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensure confirmation signs are placed past the road junctions to reassure drivers that they made the correct turn. Normal sequence is warning, guide, and then confirmation sign.</li> <li>(2) Ensure confidence signs are used in urban areas to help reassure drivers.</li> <li>(3) Ensure warning signs are placed 50 to 100 meters before road junction.</li> <li>(4) Ensure countdown signs consist of a series of three signs spaced at 100 meter intervals before the identified feature.</li> <li>(5) Ensure guide signs are placed on both sides of the road to be followed with confirmation signs about 150 meters after the junction.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Ensure signs are visible from the roadway.</li> </ul> <p>8. Teams note sign locations on overlay for reference and verification.</p> <p>9. Teams perform routine maintenance on signed routes to ensure signs have not been tampered with or damaged.</p> <p>*10. Platoon leader processes reports.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidates reports from teams.</li> <li>b. Updates overlay.</li> <li>c. Submits report to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-332-5021	PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY SITUATION MAP
	071-332-5050	MONITOR OPERATIONS/MOVEMENTS OF SUBORDINATE UNITS
	071-410-0010	CONDUCT A LEADER'S RECONNAISSANCE



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 21-24-SMCT	051-196-3065	PREPARE A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE OVERLAY
	071-329-1019	USE A MAP OVERLAY
	071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Dislocated Civilian Control Operations (19-3-13001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Numerous civilians have been or are expected to be driven from their home by military operations in the area in which the platoon is operating. These dislocated civilians could disrupt troop movements on the MSR and affect security. Higher headquarters has coordinated with host-nation police to carry out combined dislocated civilian control operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Dislocated civilians are assisted and protected while being diverted from routes and areas where they might interfere with US or allied military operations. Dislocated civilians are treated IAW the Geneva Conventions and agreements between the US and the host nation. Dislocated civilian operations are conducted as combined operations with host-nation authorities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader plans troop-leading procedures for dislocated civilian control operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives the mission.</li> <li>b. Issues a warning order.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with higher headquarters for linguistic support.</li> <li>d. Determines location of aid stations, assembly points, and food and water points established by the host nation.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with higher headquarters for identification of primary and alternate evacuation routes selected by host-nation authorities for dislocated civilians.</li> <li>f. Ensures routes do not conflict with corps/division MSRs.</li> <li>g. Ensures routes are patrolled.</li> <li>h. Selects personnel to perform combined operations with host-nation personnel.</li> <li>i. Identifies sites for additional control measures such as checkpoints and roadblocks.</li> <li>j. Briefs platoon members on the following:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Rules of engagement.</li> <li>(2) Use of force restrictions.</li> <li>(3) Requirements of the Geneva Conventions.</li> <li>(4) Other US and host-nation agreements.</li> <li>(5) Local customs, mores, and taboos.</li> <li>(6) Establishes a dislocated civilian collecting point, on order.</li> </ul> </li> <li>k. Briefs the company commander on the plan.</li> <li>l. Issues orders.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon sergeant coordinates for support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests needed class I, III, IV, V, VIII, IX supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinates medical evacuation.</li> <li>c. Ensures adequate civil disturbance equipment is available.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Team implements dislocated civilian control operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Patrols selected routes.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Sets up checkpoints and roadblocks. c. Sets up a dislocated civilian collecting point. d. Screens and moves dislocated civilians through the area to establish centers or camps.  4. Teams establish control measures. a. Mark designated routes with signs to direct dislocated civilians. b. Divert dislocated civilians to designated evacuation routes and away from routes and areas being used for military operations. c. Direct dislocated civilians to aid stations, assembly points, and food and water points established by the host nation. d. Treat dislocated civilians IAW the Geneva Conventions and other US and host-nation agreements. e. Screen dislocated civilians to detect criminals, infiltrators, and enemy agents. f. Enforce control measures such as curfews, travel permits, and limits on personal belongings. Prevent unauthorized movement. Enforce priority of movement. g. Provide security at collecting points.  5. Teams maintain communications. a. Keep platoon headquarters informed of the mission's progress. b. Update overlay. c. Send updated situation reports to the platoon headquarters.  * 6. Platoon leader updates higher headquarters on the status of the operation. a. Consolidates teams' information into overlay. b. Submits overlay to company operations center.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4105	Operate A Traffic Control Post
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	191-376-4106	Operate A Roadblock And A Checkpoint
	191-377-4202	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A TRAFFIC CONTROL POST
	191-377-4203	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A ROADBLOCK/CHECKPOINT
STP 21-1-SMCT	191-377-4204	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DEFILE
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	181-906-1505	CONDUCT COMBAT OPERATIONS ACCORDING TO THE LAW OF WAR
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-332-5000	PREPARE AN OPERATION OVERLAY
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT EPW/CI OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1014)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR soldiers are captured.

**STANDARD:** OPFOR soldiers escape or retain weapons and documents of military intelligence value.1. Prevent successful search.2. Maintain unit integrity.3. Plan escape.4. Delay movement to nearest collecting point.5. Prevent safeguarding of EPWs in order to cause embarrassment to the US.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Straggler Control Operations (19-3-13002)  
(FM 19-4) (FM 8-35)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has been directed to conduct operations to control stragglers. The platoon has a straggler control plan that includes general locations for straggler posts along likely routes of straggler flow. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Stragglers are assisted, detained, or apprehended when they become separated from their units without authority and are expeditiously returned to military control as appropriate. Stragglers are diverted from MSR's onto alternate routes or collecting points to alleviate congestion of the MSR's. Equipment, property, and documents are confiscated and disposed of IAW the straggler control plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader plans for straggler control operations using troop-leading procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines location of straggler collecting points, aid stations, units assigned to or operating in the AO, and allied forces straggler control posts.</li> <li>b. Decides to conduct straggler control in conjunction with existing roadblocks, checkpoints, or TCPs, and/or to establish separate control posts.</li> <li>c. Selects personnel to perform straggler control operations.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with company operations center regarding host nation or other allied force support if joint straggler points are to be established.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with company operations center for threat analysis.</li> <li>f. Plans use of temporary signs to direct stragglers to their units.</li> <li>g. Briefs platoon personnel on the operation as well as their duties and responsibilities.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Includes handling and disposition procedures.</li> <li>(2) Includes threat information.</li> <li>(3) Includes reporting procedures.</li> <li>(4) Includes intelligence gathering requirements.</li> <li>(5) Includes location of straggler collecting points, posts, and patrols.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Back-briefs the company commander.</li> <li>i. Issue orders.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon sergeant coordinates support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests needed class I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinates medical evacuation.</li> <li>c. Ensures communications are established among platoon headquarters, company operations center, and squads/teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Team leaders establish straggler control posts.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Mark routes with signs to direct stragglers to their units.</li> <li>b. Establish sites.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Select site where approaching vehicles cannot easily turn around to avoid the post.</li> <li>(2) Select site that has space for a vehicle holding area.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Identify locations for straggler lines, collecting points, and patrols.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Establish security measures. e. Establish communications.</p> <p>4. Squad establishes a straggler collecting point when the control posts are unable to handle the flow of stragglers.</p> <p>a. One team processes incoming stragglers. b. Second team guards deliberate stragglers. c. Third team conducts relief operations for the other teams. d. Squad leader coordinates with platoon headquarters for medical transportation of stragglers.</p> <p>5. Teams process stragglers.</p> <p>a. Identify and categorize each straggler as follows:                      (1) Lost- Category A.                      (2) Personnel dazed or in shock- Category B.                      (3) Deliberate stragglers or persons running away for unknown reasons- Category C.                      (4) Wounded, injured, or ill- Category D.</p> <p>b. Give first aid to wounded, injured, or ill stragglers and coordinate their evacuation to nearest medical facility. c. Detain, process, and search each straggler. d. Record required information on straggler report. e. Notify G2 (or military intelligence personnel) if a straggler has information of immediate tactical value. f. Direct fit soldiers to their unit or a HQ within their chain of command (or to straggler collecting point if unit location is unknown). g. Handle deliberate stragglers.                      (1) Apprehend deliberate stragglers after disarming and searching them.                      (2) Coordinate escort and transport of deliberate stragglers to their units or straggler collecting points. h. Direct allied force stragglers to the nearest straggler control point for that nation's forces. i. Safeguard weapons, equipment, property, and documents from medically evacuated and dispose of them according to the straggler control plan.</p> <p>* 6. Platoon leader provides updated situation reports to the company operations center to include information of immediate tactical value.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4105	Operate A Traffic Control Post
	191-376-4106	Operate A Roadblock And A Checkpoint
	191-376-4109	Control Traffic At A Defile
	191-376-4112	PATROL A RESTRICTED AREA

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	191-376-4115	ENFORCE TWO-PERSON RULE
	191-376-4117	USE THE DURESS CODE SYSTEM
	191-376-4119	MAINTAIN AND OPERATE RIOT CONTROL AGENT DISPERSERS (M33A1/M36)
	191-376-5112	APPREHEND A SUBJECT
	191-376-5115	SELECT TYPE OF BODY SEARCH TO PERFORM
	191-376-5116	PERFORM A STAND-UP SEARCH OR A FRISK (PAT-DOWN)
	191-376-5117	PERFORM A PRONE SEARCH
	191-376-5119	PERFORM A WALL SEARCH
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	191-377-4202	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A TRAFFIC CONTROL POST
	191-377-4203	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A ROADBLOCK/CHECKPOINT
	191-377-4204	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DEFILE
	191-379-4402	PLAN ROADBLOCKS AND CHECKPOINTS
	191-379-4403	PLAN FOR DEFILES AND HOLDING AREAS
	191-379-4412	PLAN STRAGGLER CONTROL OPERATIONS
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-332-5022	PREPARE A BATTALION SITUATION REPORT (SITREP)
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES

## OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

### **TASK:** CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1005)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular, and/or irregular elements in the enemy rear area along main supply routes and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** 1. Set up well-concealed locations. 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected targets. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being detected. 6. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

### **TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1013)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate rear support bases and command and control facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt combat service support operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate combat service support bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict light casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

### **TASK:** DISRUPT EPW/CI OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1014)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR soldiers are captured.

**STANDARD:** OPFOR soldiers escape or retain weapons and documents of military intelligence value. 1. Prevent successful search. 2. Maintain unit integrity. 3. Plan escape. 4. Delay movement to nearest collecting point. 5. Prevent safeguarding of EPWs in order to cause embarrassment to the US.



**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Convoy Security (19-3-20004)  
 (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The MP platoon is conducting MP support operations. A convoy will be passing through the platoon area of operations. Higher headquarters has directed the platoon to provide dedicated security for the convoy while it is in the platoon's area of operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon provides security for the convoy while it is in the platoon's area of operations. The platoon prevents or reduces the effects of attempts to damage or destroy the convoy.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader plans security for the convoy using troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts an estimate of the situation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a detailed mission analysis.</li> <li>(2) Includes understanding and restating the mission.</li> <li>(3) Uses the reverse planning sequence.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Issues a warning order to all squads.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Includes a mission statement (who, what, where, when, and why).</li> <li>(2) Includes friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>(3) Includes general and special instructions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Makes a tentative plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Analyzes mission using METT-TC information.</li> <li>(2) Requests intelligence from higher headquarters.</li> <li>(3) Analyzes and compares the tentative plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Conducts a map reconnaissance of the convoy route.</li> <li>e. Directs teams to conduct a route reconnaissance.</li> <li>f. Completes the plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinates with adjacent platoons to determine pickup point and release point for the convoy.</li> <li>(2) Coordinates with the company operations center for threat analysis, rules of engagement, and overlay of the route.</li> <li>(3) Determines the weapons mix.</li> <li>(4) Coordinates with convoy commander for escort procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Briefs higher headquarters and supporting agencies on the plan.</li> <li>h. Issues the plan to the platoon using a sketch or terrain model to assist in the briefing.</li> <li>i. Supervises the precombat check.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a spot-check of weapons and mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>(2) Establishes communications with higher headquarters and elements within the formation.</li> <li>(3) Supervises rehearsals.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>2. Teams conduct a hasty route reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Collect information on current vehicle and pedestrian traffic.</li> <li>b. Plot locations and characteristics of road obstructions.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Determine the driving time and distance between the pickup and release points.</li> <li>d. Locate potential ambush sites along the route so fire support may be coordinated with higher headquarters.</li> <li>e. Prepare and submit the reconnaissance report to the platoon leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Platoon sergeant/squad leader coordinates for soldier and mission support requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assists platoon leader with planning.</li> <li>b. Inspects the escort elements for weapons, internal security measures, and to determine combat power of convoy.</li> <li>c. Requests needed class I, III, VIII, and IX supplies.</li> <li>d. Coordinates medical evacuation.</li> <li>e. Coordinates vehicle recovery operations.</li> <li>f. Ensures communications are established and maintained with subordinates and higher headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. Platoon leader finalizes convoy security plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for host-nation support.</li> <li>b. Verifies frequencies and call signs of the escort unit.</li> <li>c. Verifies composition (number and type of vehicles) of the convoy and order of the march.</li> <li>d. Establishes checkpoints along the route.</li> <li>e. Plans security for scheduled rest and refueling stops within the AO.</li> <li>f. Plans to enhance security at critical points along the route such as bridges, tunnels, key intersections, and sharp bends in the road.</li> <li>g. Determines alternate routes to bypass potential obstacles.</li> <li>h. Coordinates with the commander of the escorted unit to verify actions on contact.</li> <li>i. Plans to send scout vehicle ahead of the convoy.</li> <li>j. Establishes rally points.</li> <li>k. Plans reaction to an ambush.</li> <li>l. Plans for response force in the event of enemy attack.</li> <li>m. Determines emergency actions to be taken during ambushes, air attack, or artillery attack.</li> <li>n. Verifies actions in case of vehicle breakdown.</li> <li>o. Briefs escort and security teams.</li> <li>p. Briefs convoy commander on security arrangements, convoy procedures, and actions on contact.</li> <li>q. Briefs company commander on security arrangements.</li> <li>r. Adjusts plan as needed based on commander's guidance.</li> <li>s. Conducts a rehearsal ( time permitting).</li> </ul> <p>* 5. Platoon leader or senior team leader coordinates convoy procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with releasing escort unit at pickup point.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with convoy commander for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Actions to take in event of enemy attack.</li> <li>(2) Vehicle speed.</li> <li>(3) Distance between vehicles.</li> <li>(4) Recovery plans.</li> <li>(5) Convoy rally points.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>6. Platoon conducts the convoy security operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Squads/teams send scout vehicles ahead of convoy ( if available).</li> <li>b. Squads/teams escort convoy.</li> <li>c. Squads/teams maintain communications with company operations center.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Report time the escort is due at pickup point. (2) Report passage times through checkpoints. (3) Report time into and out of rest stops or refueling points. (4) Report critical information such as reports of enemy activity, vehicles that fall out of convoy movement, or any activity that may interfere with movement. (5) Report time the convoy is released at the release point. d. Squads/teams provide security at halts. (1) Ensure halts are taken only where there is a clear view of the entire escort column. (2) Take predetermined security positions. e. Squads/teams react to attack or ambush. (1) Immediately move vehicles out of the kill zone. (2) Prevent other vehicles from entering kill zone. (3) Lay down heavy volume of fire on attacking force and sweep the area depending on the situation. (4) Follow rules of engagement. (5) Use fire and movement techniques. (6) Call for indirect fire and/or close air support, if needed. (7) Call for additional MP support, if needed. (8) Replace key personnel as necessary. (9) Conduct resupply or recovery activities as necessary. (10) Evacuate casualties and captured enemy personnel. (11) Continue the mission.  * 7. Platoon leader releases the convoy. a. Coordinates release of the convoy with the receiving unit at the release point. b. Forwards SITREP to company headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	071-326-5505 191-376-4110	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER Provide In-Transit Security
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	051-191-2364  071-332-5021	Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY SITUATION MAP
	071-410-0010 191-377-4209	CONDUCT A LEADER'S RECONNAISSANCE SUPERVISE SECURITY PERSONNEL DURING CONVOY OF SPECIAL WEAPONS AND AMMUNITION
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	091-309-0710	SUPERVISE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES
	091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)
	551-721-3352	DIRECT CONVOY DEFENSE OPERATIONS

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1003)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Sustain minimum casualties. 8. Report actions to superiors.

**TASK: CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

**TASK: ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

**STANDARD:** 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Security of Conventional Ammunition Supply Point (19-3-20008)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A combat support military police platoon has been directed to provide security for an ASP. The platoon must establish a perimeter defense. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon secures the ASP against enemy or criminal activity so that the ASP is able to maintain normal operation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. * Platoon leader plans to conduct security of the ASP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiates troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>b. Reviews existing security measures.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with ASP personnel to synchronize security measures.</li> <li>d. Directs the establishment and maintenance of communications with the company and the ASP through primary and alternate means.</li> <li>e. Conducts a reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>f. Requests a threat analysis from the company.</li> <li>g. Requests host-nation support and coordination information from the company.</li> <li>h. Coordinates with MP units conducting area security in sector.</li> <li>i. Coordinates with higher headquarters for a response force.</li> <li>j. Plans placement of obstacles and added physical security enhancement measures to include protective barriers.</li> <li>k. Plans access control for the restricted area to include the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Challenge and password/duress systems.</li> <li>(2) Access roster.</li> <li>(3) Badge system, if available.</li> <li>(4) Perimeter.</li> </ul> </li> <li>l. Plans stand-off security measures to include the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Mounted and dismounted patrols.</li> <li>(2) MWD patrols, if available.</li> <li>(3) LPs/OPs.</li> <li>(4) Movement sensors.</li> <li>(5) Defensive positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>m. Coordinates with public affairs, civil affairs, and PSYOP personnel regarding civilian demonstrations.</li> <li>n. Develops overlay for ASP defense.</li> <li>o. Briefs plan.</li> <li>p. Provides overlay to company commander for approval.</li> <li>q. Issues order.</li> <li>r. Briefs platoon on ROE and conducting rehearsal</li> <li>s. Back-briefs the ASP commander.</li> </ul> <p>2. * Platoon sergeant coordinates for soldier and mission support requirements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests food, fuel, ammunition, medical, religious, and maintenance support from the company.</li> <li>b. Requests medical evacuation support.</li> <li>c. Ensures adequate civil disturbance equipment is available.</li> </ul> <p>3. * Squad leader executes mission plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues orders to teams.</li> <li>b. Conducts rehearsal .</li> <li>c. Coordinates with ASP personnel to verify communications, distress/duress signals, defense plans, and to prevent fratricide.</li> </ul> <p>4. Squads/teams establish internal security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establish a dismount point.</li> <li>b. Allow only authorized personnel access to the ASP.</li> <li>c. Conduct perimeter patrols.</li> <li>d. Practice noise, light, and litter discipline.</li> <li>e. Maintain communications with platoon headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>5. Squads/teams conduct external security operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establish LPs/OPs for early warning.</li> <li>b. Employ movement sensors.</li> <li>c. Establish defensive positions.</li> <li>d. Emplace obstacles and physical security enhancement measures.</li> <li>e. Establish a TCP at the intersection of the MSR and ASP access road.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Maintain free flow of traffic.</li> <li>(2) Screen traffic entering the access road.</li> <li>(3) Control straggler and refugees.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Maintain communications with the platoon headquarters.</li> </ul> <p>6. *Platoon leader maintains communications with higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provides current status reports.</li> <li>b. Receives latest intelligence reports.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	113-587-2071	OPERATE SECURE SINCGARS FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) (NET MEMBERS)
	191-376-4105	Operate A Traffic Control Post
	191-376-4108	Operate A Dismount Point
	191-376-4112	PATROL A RESTRICTED AREA
	191-376-4114	CONTROL ENTRY TO AND EXIT FROM A RESTRICTED AREA
	191-376-5122	SEARCH A VEHICLE

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-332-5021	PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY SITUATION MAP
	071-710-0004	SUPERVISE USE OF NIGHT VISION DEVICES
	191-377-4201	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DISMOUNT POINT
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA
	071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES
	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
STP 21-24-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	051-195-3005	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF NON-EXPLOSIVE ANTIVEHICULAR OBSTACLES
	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Provide Support for Deep-Water Port Security (19-3-20009)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A combat support military police company has been directed to provide security for deep-water port. The platoon is responsible for a designated area from the perimeter of the port, outward. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon establishes security measures to protect assigned area of the port facilities and cargo against enemy, criminal activity, and civilian demonstrators

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader determines requirements for external security.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviews existing security measures.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with security force providing internal port security to synchronize procedures.</li> <li>c. Ensures communications are established and maintained with the internal port security force.</li> <li>d. Conducts a thorough reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>e. Requests engineer support for obstacles and barriers.</li> <li>f. Requests threat assessment to include terrorists and other threats from higher headquarters.</li> <li>g. Conducts a mission analysis to determine assets required and squad areas of responsibility.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon leader employs available support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employs fire support, if available.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures targets support the defense plan.</li> <li>(2) Conducts connectivity drill with firing unit if time permits.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Coordinates with MP units conducting area security in sector to include identifying rally points.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon sergeant coordinates support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests needed class I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinates medical evacuation.</li> <li>c. Ensures adequate civil disturbance equipment is available.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Platoon leader implements the security plan to secure from the perimeter fence outward.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefs the plan to the squad leaders.</li> <li>b. Back-briefs the company commander.</li> <li>c. Employs security measures to provide warning of ground or air attacks and possible nuclear, chemical, or biological threats; and to thwart enemy or criminal activity as far from the port as possible.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Includes mounted/dismounted screening patrols.</li> <li>(2) Includes LPs/OPs.</li> <li>(3) Includes movement sensors.</li> <li>(4) Includes defensive sectors.</li> <li>(5) Includes traffic control measures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Coordinates with host nation for access control. d. Plans security measures to prevent penetration of the perimeter fence. (1) Includes placement of obstacle and protective barriers. (2) Includes MWD patrols, if available. e. Establishes a response force to assist internal security force, if required. f. Develops overlay for port defense.  5. Squads/teams conduct security operations. a. Conduct mounted/dismounted screening patrols. b. Establish LPs/OPs for early warning. c. Employ movement sensors. d. Establish defensive sectors. e. Emplace obstacles and protective barriers. f. Prepare to conduct civil disturbance operations as necessary. g. Establish TCP at intersection or MSR and port access road. (1) Maintain free flow of traffic. (2) Screen traffic entering the access road. (3) Control stragglers and refugees. h. Ensure security of cargo moving through the platoon area of operation. i. Maintain communications with the platoon headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4112 191-376-4114	PATROL A RESTRICTED AREA CONTROL ENTRY TO AND EXIT FROM A RESTRICTED AREA
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-331-1000	PREPARE THE PLATOON EARLY WARNING SYSTEM AN/TRS-2 FOR OPERATION
	071-331-1002	MONITOR THE PLATOON EARLY WARNING SYSTEM AN/TRS-2
	071-331-1003	INSTALLATION PLANNING AND INSTALLATION OF A PLATOON EARLY WARNING SYSTEM AN/TRS-2
STP 21-1-SMCT	191-376-4105	Operate A Traffic Control Post
STP 21-24-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	051-195-3005	DIRECT CONSTRUCTION OF NON-EXPLOSIVE ANTIVEHICULAR OBSTACLES
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**



**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
 6 MP Squads (DS)  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Pipeline Security (19-3-20010)  
 (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A combat support military police platoon has received an OPORD directing it to provide security for a critical pipeline. The security mission includes facilities such as pump stations and terminals as well as above ground sections of pipeline. Operations may occur at night. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon ensures the security of the pipeline against pilferage, enemy action, or civilian demonstrators. The pipeline maintains or is able to resume normal operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader evaluates available security assets and measures already in place.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with friendly units that have physical security responsibilities in areas when the pipeline is laid.</li> <li>b. Receives information from higher headquarters regarding host-nation support.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with MP units providing area security in sector.</li> <li>d. Integrates available assets.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon leader evaluates the threat and determines special security considerations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts a thorough reconnaissance of above ground sections of pipeline and facilities to determine areas of vulnerability.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with the company for threat analysis.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with petroleum group officer.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon leader ensures that communications are established with the company headquarters, supported petroleum group, and friendly units capable of surveying the pipeline.</li> <li>* 4. Platoon leader plans security measures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Considers feasibility of measures to enhance pipeline security to include burial and camouflage.</li> <li>b. Plans security of pipeline to include the following:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Mounted/dismounted patrols.</li> <li>(2) Movement sensors.</li> <li>(3) MWD patrols, if available.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Plans security of pump stations, terminals, and other key nodes to include the following:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Mounted/dismounted patrols.</li> <li>(2) Static defensive positions.</li> <li>(3) Obstacles.</li> <li>(4) LPs/OPs.</li> <li>(5) Movement sensors.</li> <li>(6) Dismounted points.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(7) Access control procedures, if required.</p> <p>d. Develops overlay for pipeline security.</p> <p>(1) Includes rules of engagement.</p> <p>(2) Includes use of force.</p> <p>e. Forwards overlay to company.</p> <p>f. Issues orders to platoon.</p> <p>* 5. Platoon sergeant requests support requirements.</p> <p>a. Requests needed class I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX supplies.</p> <p>b. Coordinates medical evacuation.</p> <p>c. Coordinates morale support activities.</p> <p>d. Ensures adequate civil disturbance equipment is available.</p> <p>6. Squads/teams conduct security operations for the pipeline.</p> <p>a. Conduct mounted/dismounted patrols to prevent destruction of pipeline or pilferage and to protect terminals, pump stations, and above ground sections of pipeline.</p> <p>b. Establish LPs/OPs for early warning around terminals, pump stations, and above ground sections of pipeline.</p> <p>c. Establish defensive positions around terminals, pump stations, and above ground sections of pipeline.</p> <p>d. Emplace obstacles.</p> <p>e. Implement access control procedures to include establishing a dismount point.</p> <p>f. Respond to attacks on or sabotage of the pipeline.</p> <p>(1) Detect attacks or sabotage.</p> <p>(2) Report attacks or sabotage.</p> <p>(3) Respond to attacks or sabotage to include engaging hostile forces and providing security for repairs.</p> <p>g. Monitor critical parts of the pipeline on a routine but random basis.</p> <p>h. Monitor ground sensors and other intrusion detection devise.</p> <p>i. Check line pressure devices in pipeline and pumping facilities to detect breaks in the line that may indicate pilferage.</p> <p>j. Conduct rehearsals.</p> <p>k. Maintain communications with company headquarters.</p> <p>l. Report suspected sabotage and pilferage immediately.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	113-587-2072	OPERATE SINGARS FREQUENCY HOPPING (FH) NET CONTROL STATION (NCS)
	191-376-4112	PATROL A RESTRICTED AREA
	191-376-5122	SEARCH A VEHICLE

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST
	071-332-5021	PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY
		SITUATION MAP
	071-410-0010	CONDUCT A LEADER'S RECONNAISSANCE
	191-376-5106	DETERMINE THE LEVEL OF FORCE
		REQUIRED
	191-377-4201	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DISMOUNT
		POINT
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST
	071-331-0820	ANALYZE TERRAIN
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION
		INSTRUCTION (SOI)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Railway Security (19-3-20011)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A combat support military police platoon has been directed to conduct railway security. The cargo includes special weapons. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon provides security and prevents pilferage, detects enemy activity directed against the train, and defends the train against enemy attack.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader determines security requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with train commander to identify the type and location of sensitive and/or easily pilfered cargo.</li> <li>b. Requests the threat assessment (to include terrorist threat) from higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon leader conducts aerial or map reconnaissance of rail route.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies key terrain and vulnerable points on route (bridges, tunnels, and sharp curves).</li> <li>b. Identifies friendly units along the route for support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon leader coordinates with units responsible for sectors that the rail route passes through to--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Act as a response force.</li> <li>b. Conduct a reconnaissance of the track to check for damage and deter ambush.</li> <li>c. Occupy key terrain prior to and during passage.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Platoon sergeant requests support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests needed class I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for medical evacuation.</li> <li>c. Ensures communications are established and maintained with higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. Platoon leader coordinates with company on available support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives information on available fire support.</li> <li>b. Receives information on available host-nation support.</li> <li>c. Receives information on available aerial surveillance of the route prior to and during passage from company/battalion.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. Platoon leader/squad leader coordinates with train commander for emergency procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Plans for ambush.</li> <li>b. Plans for air attack.</li> <li>c. Plans for blockage of tracks.</li> <li>d. Plans for mechanical problems affecting all or part of the train.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 7. Platoon leader/squad leader coordinates with ordnance technician for special weapons requirements, if present.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 8. Platoon leader issues orders to platoon. * 9. Squad leader emplaces the security force. a. Positions security force to continuously monitor cars carrying sensitive or easily pilfered cargo. b. Positions key weapons based on threat. 10. Squads/teams conduct security. a. Monitor sensitive and easily pilfered cargo continuously. b. Report immediately any irregularities in procedure, presence of unauthorized personnel, deficiencies, and incidents. c. Maintain 360 degree observation around the train to include posting air guards if the threat dictates. d. Employ RSTA devices. e. Inspect car doors, seals, wires, and locks for signs of tampering at all stops. f. Maintain communications with friendly supporting units.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4110	Provide In-Transit Security
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-710-0004	SUPERVISE USE OF NIGHT VISION DEVICES
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	191-377-4209	SUPERVISE SECURITY PERSONNEL DURING CONVOY OF SPECIAL WEAPONS AND AMMUNITION
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Provide Security for Designated Persons (19-3-21001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A designated person requires protective escort while conducting official business within the platoon's area of operations. The platoon has been detailed to provide security for the designated person and has been given a copy of the person's itinerary. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon prepares for and executes a comprehensive plan to ensure the safety of the designated person during his or her entire visit. The designated person is unharmed during the visit.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader plans security for the designated person upon receipt of mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiates troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>b. Evaluates the following:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The importance of the protected person.</li> <li>(2) The political attitude of the population.</li> <li>(3) Obstacles involved.</li> <li>(4) Means of transportation.</li> <li>(5) Length of security mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Coordinates with the Personal Security Officer for the designated person.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with the company for threat analysis and the rules of engagement.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with higher headquarters for local military and host-nation support.</li> <li>f. Conducts a reconnaissance and visits locations on the itinerary with an advance team.</li> <li>g. Determines the number of personnel needed.</li> <li>h. Coordinates for MWD support, based on threat and availability.</li> <li>i. Back-briefs the company commander.</li> <li>j. Issues OPORD.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon leader briefs security personnel on mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefs on expected conduct and demeanor of security personnel. Security personnel should--                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Take no risks with the safety and well-being of the protected person.</li> <li>(2) Use alternative plans if the protected person ignores the measures taken for his or her protection.</li> <li>(3) Enforce restrictions on individuals approaching the protected person.</li> <li>(4) Take positions where they can observe everyone and everything in the immediate vicinity of the protected person.</li> <li>(5) Remain alert and close to the protected person at all times.</li> <li>(6) Secure the facility but do not enter if protected person goes into a tent or room.</li> <li>(7) Not enter into conversations with the protected people or other people.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(8) Comply with rules of engagement, rules of interaction, restrictions on use of force, and the requirement that the evacuation of the protected person has priority over defeating attackers.</p> <p>b. Briefs on the details of the mission plan to include--</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Means of transportation.</li> <li>(2) Crowd control measures.</li> <li>(3) Checkpoints and coordination points.</li> <li>(4) Emergency actions to be taken in event of assassination attempts, ambush, or artillery attack.</li> <li>(5) Itinerary of the visit.</li> <li>(6) Primary and alternate frequencies for communications.</li> </ol> <p>* 3. Platoon sergeant coordinates support requirements.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests for air and artillery support.</li> <li>b. Requests backup response teams.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with the company for host-nation police support.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for medical support and medical evacuation.</li> <li>e. Ensures adequate civil disturbance equipment is available.</li> </ol> <p>4. Platoon conducts rehearsal, if time permits.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Platoon leader identifies weaknesses and shortcomings of the platoon's performance.</li> <li>b. Platoon sergeant trains individual tasks needed to support the mission.</li> </ol> <p>5. Security team members protect the designated person during the visit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Remain alert at all times to provide constant protection.</li> <li>b. Restrict the circulation of unauthorized people around and near the protected person.</li> <li>c. Remain a short distance from the protected person.</li> <li>d. Take positions where they can observe everything and everyone in the vicinity of the protected person.</li> <li>e. Secure the facility but do not enter if the protected person enters a tent or room.</li> <li>f. Maintain communications with platoon headquarters.</li> <li>g. Update headquarters on progress of the mission.</li> </ol> <p>6. Security team members protect the designated person while traveling by vehicle.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure vehicles are in excellent mechanical condition.</li> <li>b. Guard transport and escort vehicles to prevent tampering.</li> <li>c. Secure structures that offer view of vehicle boarding.</li> <li>d. Use scout vehicle in advance of main party to observe conditions during road movement.</li> <li>e. Follow with a reserve vehicle to be used in emergencies.</li> <li>f. Use dummy vehicles to conceal location of protected person if additional security measures are appropriate.</li> <li>g. Maintain radio contact.</li> <li>h. Notify platoon headquarters of progress through selected checkpoints.</li> </ol> <p>7. Security team members protect the designated person while traveling by air.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Guard aircraft and fuel/petroleum products to be used at all times.</li> <li>b. Secure structures offering a view of the boarding area.</li> <li>c. Keep all unauthorized persons away from the aircraft.</li> <li>d. Ensure security personnel ride with the designated person or in an accompanying aircraft.</li> <li>e. Make advance arrangements with local security forces at destination and likely alternatives.</li> </ol>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
f. Notify headquarters when security detail arrives at destination.		
* 8. Platoon leader notifies higher headquarters when protected person leaves the area or when security team hands off responsibility to next escort detail.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4114	CONTROL ENTRY TO AND EXIT FROM A RESTRICTED AREA
	191-376-5106	DETERMINE THE LEVEL OF FORCE REQUIRED
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	091-309-0710	SUPERVISE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)

## OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

### TASK: CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1003)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Sustain minimum casualties. 8. Report actions to superiors.

### TASK: CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

### TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1013)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate rear support bases and command and control facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt combat service support operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate combat service support bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict light casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Provide MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense (19-3-22002)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Platoon has been designated as a response force for a base or base cluster. There is a likelihood that base operations may become disrupted by hostile elements or other conditions that exceed base capabilities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon has a plan that has been prepared, coordinated, and rehearsed. When a response becomes necessary, the platoon implements the plan and continues the mission until the base or base cluster is able to resume normal operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes tentative plan.</li> <li>b. Task organizes personnel and equipment.</li> <li>c. Assigns sectors.</li> <li>d. Reviews prioritized list of critical facilities.</li> <li>e. Coordinates for needed additional support to include the following:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Additional MP assets.</li> <li>(2) Indirect fire support.</li> <li>(3) Close air support.</li> <li>(4) Engineer support.</li> <li>(5) Interpreters.</li> <li>(6) PSYOP teams.</li> <li>(7) Civil affairs teams.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon sergeant coordinates sustainment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for medical supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for class I supplies.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for class V supplies.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon leader coordinates with base/base cluster commander for the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communications to include--                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducting random communications checks with base defense operations center.</li> <li>(2) Identifying recognition signals.</li> <li>(3) Identifying password.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Reviews fire support plan.</li> <li>c. Verifies frequencies and call signs of FDC.</li> <li>d. Requests defense plan with overlay to include mines and obstacles.</li> <li>e. Coordinates rally points and link up with base defense operations center.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Platoon conducts rehearsal with base units.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Includes base defense operations center.</li> <li>b. Includes supported units.</li> <li>c. Includes air force elements.</li> <li>d. Includes the rear area operations center.</li> <li>e. Includes a TCF representative.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 5. Platoon leader and base/base cluster commander finalize the plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Make changes based on information from the rehearsal.</li> <li>b. Forward the plan to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. Platoon responds to situation IAW the defense plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Synchronizes the response with the defending element.</li> <li>b. Maintains constant communications with supported and higher elements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 7. Platoon leader evaluates the situation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directs teams to gather on-site intelligence.</li> <li>b. Determines if the platoon can handle the situation.</li> <li>c. Requests additional support if the situation exceeds the platoon's capabilities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 8. Platoon leader directs the maneuver of the platoon.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selects appropriate technique and formation.</li> <li>b. Uses covered and concealed routes and positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 9. Platoon leader controls fires.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designates priority targets for platoon.</li> <li>b. Employs all available fires to destroy hostile targets.</li> </ul> </li> <li>10. Squad/teams conduct maneuver.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Overwatch elements remain in defilade.</li> <li>b. Bounding elements make contact using smallest element.</li> </ul> </li> <li>11. Squad leader controls distribution and rate of fire.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Team members engage hostile targets.</li> <li>b. Team members employ appropriate weapons drills.</li> </ul> </li> <li>12. Platoon remains in contact without becoming engaged and maintains ability to maneuver.</li> <li>13. Squad leader submits SITREPS and LACE reports to the platoon leader.</li> <li>14. Platoon sergeant/medic coordinates medical evacuation.</li> <li>*15. Platoon leader reconsolidates the platoon upon resolution of the situation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assembles at a secure rally point.</li> <li>b. Receives status of ammunition, casualties, and equipment.</li> <li>c. Reports status to higher headquarters and awaits further orders.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5605	CONTROL MOVEMENT OF A FIRE TEAM

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD
	071-332-5021	PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY SITUATION MAP
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	091-309-0711	DIRECT VEHICLE AND EQUIPMENT RECOVERY OPERATIONS
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES
	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Security of a Critical Site (19-3-22004)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The commander has designated certain military or civilian sites within the area of operations as critical to the mission. The platoon has been directed to provide continuous security for a critical site. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon establishes and maintains continuous security of the site IAW the security plan, denying access to the site.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader assesses the site.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies the threat (coordinates with the company or the S2).</li> <li>b. Identifies vulnerabilities.</li> <li>c. Reviews existing security.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with the site commander.</li> <li>e. Conducts a reconnaissance of the operational area.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon leader determines requirements for the security mission by considering the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dismounted/mounted patrols (internal and external).</li> <li>b. Access control to include use of challenge and password/duress code.</li> <li>c. Fire support.</li> <li>d. Barriers.</li> <li>e. Static guards.</li> <li>f. Dismount point.</li> <li>g. LPs/OPs.</li> <li>h. Lighting.</li> <li>i. Redundant communications (interior and exterior).</li> <li>j. MWDs.</li> <li>k. Remote sensors.</li> <li>l. Response force.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon leader coordinates needed augmentation or support.</li> <li>* 4. Platoon leader completes the plan based on available resources.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selects security measures to be used.</li> <li>b. Develops guard force orders.</li> <li>c. Develop patrol plan.</li> <li>d. Integrates ROE/ROI into plans.</li> <li>e. Submits plan to company operations center or division provost marshal for review.</li> <li>f. Issues OPORD.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. Teams establish communications.</li> <li>6. Teams control access to the protected site.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establish sally port.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conduct vehicle searches and personnel searches.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Search for contraband.</p> <p>b. Operate a dismount point.</p> <p>(1) Allow only authorized persons and vehicles access to the protected site.</p> <p>(2) Direct vehicles into authorized parking areas and control dispersion of vehicles.</p> <p>c. Establish barrier control measures using available materials to slowly channel and/or deny access to traffic.</p> <p>d. Implement use of access roster, badge system, and duress code.</p> <p>e. Enforce light and noise discipline.</p> <p>f. Maintain communications with platoon headquarters or site security control center.</p> <p>g. Establish challenge and password system.</p> <p>h. Use night-vision devices.</p> <p>7. Teams establish perimeter protection.</p> <p>a. Establish LP/OP.</p> <p>b. Set up an intrusion detection system to include sensors, surveillance equipment, or cameras.</p> <p>c. Use night-vision devices.</p> <p>d. Coordinate with MWD patrols.</p> <p>e. Emplace perimeter control measures to include concertina wire, mines, fire pits, trenches, barricades, fences, guard posts, and guard towers.</p> <p>f. Establish fighting positions.</p> <p>8. Teams implement patrol plan.</p> <p>a. Conduct interior patrols.</p> <p>(1) Restrict access to restricted areas.</p> <p>(2) Enforce two-person rule.</p> <p>(3) Respond to security breaches.</p> <p>(4) Inspect barriers and report problems.</p> <p>b. Conduct exterior patrols.</p> <p>(1) Prevent unauthorized approach.</p> <p>(2) Respond to incidences and accidents.</p> <p>(3) Conduct information dissemination and reporting.</p> <p>(4) Inspect barriers and report problems.</p> <p>* 9. Platoon leader monitors mission progress.</p> <p>a. Checks the work of the platoon sergeant and squad leaders.</p> <p>b. Receives status reports from platoon sergeant and squad leaders.</p> <p>c. Reports mission status to higher headquarters.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“\*” indicates a leader task step.



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-31II-MQS	03-3761.00-1101	Prepare a Physical Security Plan
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4108	Operate A Dismount Point
	191-376-4114	CONTROL ENTRY TO AND EXIT FROM A RESTRICTED AREA
	191-376-5122	SEARCH A VEHICLE
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	113-573-8006	USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)
	191-377-4201	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DISMOUNT POINT
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA
	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1006)**

**CONDITION:** OPFOR elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of enemy support sites and/or the locations of road march elements. OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate command and control sites or convoys. 2. Conduct attack runs on designated targets. 3. Destroy enemy equipment, supplies, vehicles, and personnel. 4. Sustain minimum aircraft losses.

**TASK: CONDUCT RAID (19-OPFOR-1009)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element has occupied an objective rally point. The element has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support base.

**STANDARD:** 1. Surprise enemy forces. 2. Assault enemy support base and accomplish assigned tasks. 3. Destroy specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoid decisive engagement. 5. Withdraw all personnel from objective areas within time prescribed. 6. Obtain all priority intelligence requirements from raid site. 7. Sustain only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1013)**

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate rear support bases and command and control facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt combat service support operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate combat service support bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict light casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Security of a Command Post (19-3-22005)  
(FM 19-4) (FM 100-15) (FM 71-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Levels I and II threat forces are attempting to disrupt and destroy critical command and control elements. The platoon has been given the mission to conduct security for a command post. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon secures the command post to preclude breeches of security and without degradation of command post operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader plans to provide security to the command post on a 24-hour basis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiates troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>b. Issues a warning order to subordinate leaders and other key personnel.</li> <li>c. Reviews existing security measures.</li> <li>d. Conducts a reconnaissance of the routes to the CP and areas around the CP under all conditions.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with the headquarters commander and G3 concerning security, CP locations, and movement routes.</li> <li>f. Ensures a screen line made up of LPs/OPs and security patrols encircle the CP to provide early warning of hostile elements. The screen line should be able to detect, repel, or if necessary, destroy hostile elements.</li> <li>g. Coordinates with higher headquarters for threat analysis, access control procedures, badges, and other security requirements.</li> <li>h. Establishes a challenge and password/duress system.</li> <li>i. Makes contingency plan for augmentation forces. When using band assets, informs the bandmaster and band members of the tactical situation and security plan. Also includes them in any rehearsals. The band may be used to--               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assist in perimeter defense of the CP.</li> <li>(2) Provide access control on the road to the CP.</li> <li>(3) Operate the dismount point for the CP.</li> <li>(4) Augment or relieve security personnel on the defensive perimeter.</li> </ul> </li> <li>j. During planning, receives on-hand status reports from the platoon sergeant, squad leaders, or both.</li> <li>k. Reviews platoon requirements based on the tactical plan.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>l. Considers a field or hard-site location.</li> </ul> </li> <li>m. Makes security plans according to METT-TC and OCOKA with the assistance of the platoon sergeant, squad leaders, and other key personnel.</li> <li>n. Assists the platoon sergeant in planning and coordinating the platoon's combat service support effort.</li> <li>o. Develops a casualty evacuation plan.</li> <li>p. Briefs security plan to company commander.</li> <li>q. Issues oral OPORD to the platoon.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon sergeant coordinates for support requirements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organizes and controls the platoon CP IAW the unit SOP, platoon leader's guidance, and METT-TC factors.</li> <li>b. Trains the crews for crew-served weapons and employs them IAW the unit SOP, platoon leader's guidance, and METT-TC factors.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for administrative and logistic support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Receives squad leader's requests for rations, water, and ammunition.</li> <li>(2) Works with the company first sergeant to request resupply.</li> <li>(3) Consolidates and forwards the platoon casualty reports.</li> <li>(4) Maintains platoon strength information.</li> <li>(5) Receives and orients replacements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Coordinates for medical evacuation.</li> <li>e. Monitors the morale, discipline, and health of platoon members.</li> <li>f. Coordinates for morale support.</li> <li>g. Develops load plans.</li> <li>h. Spot checks personnel and equipment.</li> <li>i. Coordinates with the CP operations sergeant for any security and administrative support.</li> <li>j. Requests augmentation for roving patrols within the perimeter, as needed.</li> <li>k. Takes charge of task-organized elements in the platoon during tactical operations to include the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Quartering parties.</li> <li>(2) Security patrols during night attacks.</li> <li>(3) Support elements in attacks and raids.</li> <li>(4) Security forces during withdrawals.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 3. Squad leader receives mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes priority of work for the MP teams in the squad.</li> <li>b. Maintains accountability of soldiers and equipment.</li> <li>c. Inspects the condition of the soldier's weapons, clothing, and equipment.</li> <li>d. Directs the maintenance of the squad's weapons and equipment.</li> <li>e. Assigns missions to teams.</li> <li>f. Supervises execution of the CP security plan.</li> <li>g. Manages the logistical and administrative needs of the squad.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Requests and issues ammunition, water, rations, and special equipment.</li> <li>(2) Ensures that material and supplies are distributed to the squad members.</li> <li>(3) Ensures supplies and equipment are internally cross-leveled within the squad.</li> <li>(4) Keeps the platoon sergeant/leader informed on squad supply status and squad requirements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Trains the squad on the individual and collective tasks required to perform the security mission.</li> <li>i. Controls maneuver of the squad and its rate and distribution of fire.</li> <li>j. Updates the platoon leader on mission status.</li> </ul> <p>4. Squads/teams conduct the CP security mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Place TCPs near the intersection of the MSR and the access road to the CP to ensure--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Traffic continues to flow freely and traffic congestion is avoided.</li> <li>(2) MP teams screen traffic entering access road.</li> <li>(3) MP teams provide route security to include straggler and refugee control as needed.</li> <li>(4) Communications are maintained with platoon headquarters.</li> <li>(5) MP teams maintain proper cover and concealment.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
b. Operate the dismount point near the entrance to the CP. (1) Teams screen all persons desiring entry to the CP area. Only authorized personnel or vehicles are allowed to enter. (2) Teams direct vehicles into authorized parking areas and control dispersion of vehicles. (3) Team enforce noise, light, and litter discipline. (4) Teams maintain communications with platoon headquarters. c. Control entrance to the CP. (1) Teams use access posters provided by the G2 to permit entry. (2) Teams maintain primary and alternate means of communications-FM and land line. (3) Teams enforce noise, light, and litter discipline.  5. Squads/teams provide personal security for the commander. a. Ensure three MP (at a minimum) are on call for an internal QRF. b. Ensure one MP is assigned to guard the commanding general's tent.  * 6. Platoon leader coordinates with base for augmentation of a security element (non-MP) from within the base camp to conduct LZ/DZ security.  * 7. Platoon leader monitors mission progress. a. Checks the work of the platoon sergeant and squad leaders. b. Receives status reports from platoon sergeant and squad leaders. c. Reports status to higher headquarters.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4105	Operate A Traffic Control Post
	191-376-4106	Operate A Roadblock And A Checkpoint
	191-376-4108	Operate A Dismount Point
	191-376-4109	Control Traffic At A Defile
	191-376-4112	PATROL A RESTRICTED AREA
	191-376-4114	CONTROL ENTRY TO AND EXIT FROM A RESTRICTED AREA
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	191-377-4201	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DISMOUNT POINT
	191-377-4202	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A TRAFFIC CONTROL POST
	191-379-4409	PLAN ESTABLISHMENT OF TRAFFIC CONTROL POST
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST

## **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

### **TASK: ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

**STANDARD:** 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

### **TASK: CONDUCT ELECTRONIC WARFARE (19-OPFOR-1012)**

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR employs a large number of radio direction finder sets and monitors enemy forces for loose communications security practices.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate the positions of the enemy command, intelligence, and logistics radio nets. 2. Forward locations to OPFOR HQ. 3. Use jamming signals against enemy radio receivers. 4. Monitor enemy radio nets for intelligence information.

### **TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1013)**

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate rear support bases and command and control facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt combat service support operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate combat service support bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict light casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct a Cordon and Search (19-3-22006)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is operating in an urban environment and is ordered to conduct a search of a built-up area for insurgents and sympathizers. The platoon is provided an interpreter but no local police support. Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press are present in the area. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon establishes a cordon of the area and captures all insurgents and enemy material within the cordon. The platoon minimizes the inconvenience to the local populace, complies with the rules of engagement, and minimizes collateral damage.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader begins troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies personnel and equipment requirements including special equipment such as night-vision devices.</li> <li>b. Designs the cordon to prevent the escape of individuals to be searched.</li> <li>c. Divides the platoon into a search element, cordon element, and a reserve element.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for the protection of the forces conducting the operation.</li> <li>e. Requests information from higher headquarters on the rules of engagement and rules of integration.</li> <li>f. Conducts an aerial or map reconnaissance of the area before the search.</li> <li>g. Avoids a physical reconnaissance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon sergeant assists the platoon leader in planning and coordinating for equipment requirements for the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures class I, III, V, VII, and VIII supplies are on hand for the mission.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for a medical evacuation plan with higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon leader makes a tentative plan and begins initial movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organizes the element into special teams based on METT-TC.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Teams to handle prisoners.</li> <li>(2) Interrogation teams.</li> <li>(3) Documentation teams (using a recorder with a camera).</li> <li>(4) Demolition teams.</li> <li>(5) PSYOP and civil affairs teams.</li> <li>(6) Mine detection team.</li> <li>(7) Fire support team.</li> <li>(8) MWD team.</li> <li>(9) Tunnel reconnaissance team.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Back-briefs higher headquarters on the plan.</li> <li>c. Reconfirms plan based on reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Directs the platoon to start initial movement towards the objective and area to be searched.</li> <li>e. Finalizes the reconnaissance with the squad/team leaders.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Completes the plan and issues it to subordinate leaders using a terrain model or sketches.</p> <p>* 4. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant supervise precombat checks and rehearsals.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspect the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Weapons.</li> <li>(2) Night-vision devices.</li> <li>(3) Water and food.</li> <li>(4) Ammunition.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Supervise rehearsals to include the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Entering and clearing a building.</li> <li>(2) Entering and clearing a room.</li> <li>(3) Using buddy teams to cross an area.</li> <li>(4) Moving through a hallway.</li> <li>(5) Search procedures.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>5. The cordon element moves to the area to be searched and cordoned.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves into the position rapidly.</li> <li>b. Surrounds the area at once to prevent escape of insurgents and to block any enemy reinforcements.</li> <li>c. Establishes checkpoints and roadblocks.</li> </ol> <p>6. The search element conducts the search.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoids unnecessary inconvenience to the local populace.</li> <li>b. Searches all underground and underwater areas.</li> <li>c. Uses observer fire to cover any gaps in the cordon.</li> <li>d. Uses mine detectors to locate mines underground and underwater.</li> </ol> <p>7. Search teams use one of the following three methods to search the population area based on the situation:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assemble inhabitants in a central location if they appear to be hostile. (This method provides the most control and simplifies the search and interrogations. However, taking inhabitants away from their dwellings encourages looting and ill feelings.)</li> <li>b. Restrict inhabitants to their homes. (This prohibits civilian movement and discourages looting, but makes control and interrogation difficult.)</li> <li>c. Control the heads of households. (This reduces looting and minimizes claims that the search teams stole anything. This is the best method of searching because it is less disruptive to the populace.)</li> </ol> <p>8. The reserve element remains at the ready to respond.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors communications.</li> <li>b. Prepares to move on order.</li> </ol> <p>9. Platoon processes captured insurgents and material.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses the least force necessary to detain the insurgents.</li> <li>b. Turns the insurgents over to the appropriate authorities as soon as the situation allows.</li> <li>c. Handles material properly. Maintains accountability, provides storage, or releases the property.</li> </ol> <p>*10. Platoon leader controls the rate of search.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employs the reserve to assist the other two elements, as the situation requires.</li> <li>b. Reports progress to higher headquarters.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Consolidates the platoon. d. Directs reorganization as needed. e. Continues the mission or prepares for a new mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	051-192-1023	LOCATE MINES USING THE AN/PSS-11 MINE DETECTOR
	051-192-1024	LOCATE MINES USING THE AN/PRS-7 MINE DETECTOR
	071-326-0542	ENTER A BUILDING
	191-376-4106	Operate A Roadblock And A Checkpoint
	191-376-5106	DETERMINE THE LEVEL OF FORCE REQUIRED
	191-376-5115	SELECT TYPE OF BODY SEARCH TO PERFORM
	191-376-5116	PERFORM A STAND-UP SEARCH OR A FRISK (PAT-DOWN)
	191-376-5117	PERFORM A PRONE SEARCH
	191-376-5119	PERFORM A WALL SEARCH
	191-376-5121	SEARCH A BUILDING
	191-376-5122	SEARCH A VEHICLE
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	051-191-2364	Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions
	071-410-0010	CONDUCT A LEADER'S RECONNAISSANCE
	191-377-4203	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A ROADBLOCK/CHECKPOINT
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:



**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP PLATOON/SQUAD  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Radiological Survey (3-3-1041)  
 (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The NBCC has received several NBC 1 (nuclear) reports of radiological contamination within an area of operational concern. The commander needs to know the extent and intensity of contamination along a particular route within the area. Fallout has terminated but monitoring has not provided a sufficient picture of the hazard area. The NBCC orders the NBC reconnaissance platoon to conduct a radiological survey of the route within the area. Aircraft support is not available for survey operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon leader identifies the route (map inspection) for survey. Prepares personnel, equipment, and vehicles. The platoon does not exceed the commander's OEG. Conducts the survey IAW time specified in the OPORD and mission briefing. The platoon leader does not violate the turnback dose rate. The platoon completes the survey, submits NBC report of findings to NBCC, moves to the designated decontamination site, and conducts required decontamination. The platoon continues its mission or returns to the unit for debriefing.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader receives and acknowledges the OPORD and mission statement.</p> <p>* 2. Platoon leader plans and prepares for the survey.</p> <p>3. Platoon coordinates for the survey.</p> <p>4. Platoon conducts the radiological survey mission.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Platoon moves to the selected area of the survey, along a covered and concealed route, using appropriate movement techniques.</p> <p>NOTE: The platoon can conduct the survey using one of three techniques: route, point, or preselected dose rate.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. (Using the route technique) Survey teams move along the selected route taking radiation dose rate readings from the vehicle at selected intervals between checkpoints.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. (Using the point technique) Ground dose rate is obtained by dismounting from the vehicle and taking direct ground dose-rate readings or by taking the dose-rate reading inside the vehicles at points designated by the control party or the OPORD.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. (Using the preselected dose-rate technique) Locations of preselected dose rates are determined along side routes.</p> <p>NOTE: This technique is normally used only for resurveying old fallout contamination (after H+48 hours) where the decay is very slow. This dose rate is designated by the control party or the OPORD.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">e. Survey teams use the standard marking signs to mark the areas of contamination as directed in the OPORD or FRAGO.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">f. Survey teams use the standard marking signs to mark the areas of contamination as directed in the OPORD or FRAGO.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Survey teams place marking signs on the principal routes of entry into (and exit if the vicinity of the stop point) the contaminated area where dose rates is 1 centigray per hour above the ground. h. Survey teams use DA Form 1971-1-R for recording data obtained from a route survey. i. Survey items send results of their findings for point and preselected dose rate techniques using the NBC 4 (nuclear) report to the platoon leader.  * 5. Platoon leader notifies higher headquarters (NBCC) or supported units when the radiological survey is completed. a. Platoon leader submits NBC 4 (nuclear) report to the NBCC over secure radio if time is critical. If time is not critical, the platoon leader handcarries the survey data to NBCC. b. Platoon moves to the designated decontamination site. (1) Conducts required decontamination. (2) Closes and marks decontamination.  6. Platoon continues its mission or returns to the unit for debriefing.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	071-326-0608	USE VISUAL SIGNALING TECHNIQUES WHILE MOUNTED
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP
	071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION
	071-329-1018	DETERMINE DIRECTION WITHOUT A COMPASS
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP
	071-332-5000	PREPARE AN OPERATION OVERLAY
	113-572-5005	RECEIVE A VOICE UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	113-572-6006	READ A UNITED STATES MESSAGE TEXT FORMAT (USMTF) MESSAGE
	301-348-6001	PROTECT CLASSIFIED INFORMATION AND MATERIAL

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

ARTEP 19-313-10-MTP

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** HHC/HHD  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion HQ  
 Battalion  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 Company  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 Company HQ  
 3 Guard Platoons

**TASK:** Prepare For A Chemical Attack (3-3-C202)  
 (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR is using chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit personnel must assume designated MOPP level 4 within 8 minutes, and complete its preparation efforts prior to the attack reaching their location. Personnel, equipment, food and water must be protected and the mission continued.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leader issues a warning order.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
2. Unit personnel starts defensive preparation for a chemical attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assume MOPP level 4 within eight minutes after notification.</li> <li>b. Attach M9 detector paper to their right arm and left wrist and to either the right or left ankle.</li> <li>c. Conduct MOPP field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Emplace chemical agent alarm upwind of position.</li> </ul> 3. Unit personnel prepares fighting positions/ shelters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use existing natural or man-made facilities as fighting positions and shelters (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels).</li> <li>b. Dig fighting positions and bunkers with over-head cover.</li> </ul> NOTE: Fighting positions should have at least a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits. * 4. NCOs check personnel and fighting positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure that personnel are at MOPP level 4.</li> <li>b. Ensure individual and unit personnel fighting positions are hardened with sandbags and over-head cover.</li> </ul> * 5. Unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying MOPP level as appropriate.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-4002	SUPERVISE UNIT PREPARATION FOR NBC ATTACK
	031-504-3001	SUPERVISE POSITIONING OF THE CHEMICAL AGENT ALARM
STP 3-54B1-SM	031-503-3008	IMPLEMENT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE
	031-504-1008	USE AND MAINTAIN M8 OR M8A1 ALARM SYSTEM

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 3 Guard Platoons  
 Company HQ  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 HHC/HHD  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Respond To A Chemical Attack (3-3-C203)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is tactically deployed in MOPP 2. Intelligence reports that OPFOR may use chemical warfare. Automatic alarm sounds or chemical detector paper changes causing the element to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), go immediately to MOPP 4, and utilize available shelter immediately to prevent further exposure to contamination. The element reacts to the chemical alarm within 15 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Unit OIC/NCOICs ensures that element members react to the sound of the chemical agent alarm or recognize the indicators for chemical/biological attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Put on protective mask with hood within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Give the alarm vocal/nonvocal.</li> <li>c. Go to MOPP 4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Seek additional shelter if available.</li> <li>e. Administer nerve-agent antidote (buddy aid) to other members with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable).</li> <li>f. Administer nerve-agent antidote to self (if applicable).</li> <li>g. Check element members to ensure protective measures are followed.</li> </ul> 2. Unit personnel take additional protective measures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Protect exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitor the area by testing with detector kits. c. Use prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas.  3. Unit personnel conduct basic skills decon. a. Conduct skin decontamination. b. Conduct wipedown of personal equipment with M258A1 decon kit.. c. Conduct operator's spraydown of equipment.  * 4. Unit OIC/NCOIC initiates unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters. a. Ensures that casualties are provided medical care. b. Reports casualties. c. Submits NBC 1 report to higher headquarters. d. Continues mission or requests movement to alternate location.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY
	081-831-1030	ADMINISTER NERVE AGENT ANTIDOTE TO SELF (SELF-AID)
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 Division PM Operations Section

**TASK:** Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (3-3-C205)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon receives notice of a STRIKEWARN from higher headquarters directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iteration of this task are performed in MOPP 4. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Platoon completes preparations within 30 minutes of friendly nuclear strike warning. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Designated radio operator(s) acknowledges warning. a. Authenticate the call. b. Acknowledge warning by return messages.  * 2. Platoon leader issues warning order. a. Warns subordinate elements and affected units. b. Ensures subordinates execute actions as directed.  3. Platoon members complete actions before detonation occurs. a. Places vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding. b. Disconnects nonessential electronic equipment. c. Ties down essential antennas. d. Takes down nonessential antennas and antennae leads. e. Improves shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.  NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike. f. Zeros dosimeters (two are normally issued to each platoon). g. Secures loose flammable, or explosive items, and food or water containers, to protect them from nuclear weapons effects.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1018	REACT TO A NUCLEAR HAZARD

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 Company HQ  
 3 Guard Platoons  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Operations Section  
 Detachment HQ  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 HHC/HHD  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 Company

**TASK:** Prepare For Nuclear Attack (3-3-C206)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and actions to minimize casualties and damage must be initiated. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit hardens positions, equipment, and conducts periodic monitoring.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues warning order to squads and subordinate elements, ensuring all unit personnel understand the order.  2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Places vehicles and equipment for best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Turns off and disconnects nonessential electronic equipment IAW unit SOP or other guidance. c. Ties down essential antennas. d. Takes down nonessential antenna leads IAW unit SOP or other guidance. e. Improves shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeros dosimeters. g. Secures loose, flammable, or explosive items, and food or water containers, to protect them from nuclear weapons effects. h. Personnel take cover in hardened shelters if available. i. Personnel use field expedient shelters.  3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continues periodic monitoring. b. Reports all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 3 Guard Platoons  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 Company HQ  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 HHC/HHD  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (3-3-C208)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to prepare for crossing a contaminated area. Approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without receiving radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit OIC/NCOIC prepares for crossing.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Directs individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to wear protective masks or cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll sleeves down, and wear gloves. b. Receives operational exposure guidance from commander (turn base dose/turn back dose rate). c. Ensures radiac equipment operators check instruments.  2. The unit prepares for crossing. a. Identifies extra shielding requirements (for example, vehicles use sandbags on the floor). b. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers it with available material. c. Starts continuous monitoring.  3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoids stirring up dust. b. Keeps out of dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles. c. Conducts dismounted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should be buttoned up).  4. The unit performs operational decontamination of personnel and equipment. a. Checks for casualties. b. Reports casualties (if applicable). c. Conducts necessary decontamination. d. Evacuates casualties. e. Continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Operations Section  
 Detachment HQ  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion HQ  
 Battalion  
 S2 Section  
 S1 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Respond To The Residual Effects Of A Nuclear Attack (3-3-C222)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The unit mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Unit OIC/NCOIC prepares for fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure individuals cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags; roll sleeves down; and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Cover equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water containers or place them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Use shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Ensures continuous monitoring is maintained using available NBC detection and identification equipment.  2. Designated personnel monitor fallout. a. Maintain total dose information, using available total dose rate instruments. b. Ensure exposure is minimized while commander determines if relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible. c. Calculate optimum time of exit. d. Send NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters as required, using secure means when possible.  * 3. Unit leader develops a contingency plan. a. Uses guidance from higher headquarters based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Plans for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3006 031-503-4003	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 Company  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Respond To The Initial Effects Of A Nuclear Attack (3-3-C223)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom shaped cloud. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Unit personnel take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack without warning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Close eyes immediately.</li> <li>b. Drop to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible. (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately drop inside the track).</li> <li>c. Keep head and face down and helmet on.</li> <li>d. Remain down until the blast wave passes and all debris stops falling.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. Unit personnel take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack with warning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify the best available shelter (foxholes/inside shelters).</li> <li>b. Move to the shelter.</li> <li>c. Take actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.</li> <li>d. Keep clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times.</li> <li>e. Protect eyes and minimize exposed skin areas.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablish chain of command.</li> <li>b. Reestablish communications.</li> <li>c. Send NBC 1 (Nuclear) report to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Treat casualties.</li> <li>e. Evacuate casualties.</li> <li>f. Report casualties.</li> <li>g. Evaluate facilities for protection from residual effects..</li> <li>h. Implement continuous monitoring.</li> <li>i. Submit damage assessment to higher headquarters.</li> <li>j. Initiate area damage control plan as required.</li> <li>k. Extinguish all fires before they spread out of control.</li> </ul> <p>4. Squad leaders ensure weapon systems are operational.</p> <p>5. Soldiers right overturned vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids.</li> <li>b. Perform operator's maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.</li> </ul> <p>6. All personnel improve cover (if applicable).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Choose dense covering material.</li> <li>b. Cover in depth.</li> <li>c. Provide strong support.</li> <li>d. Cover as much of the opening as practical.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK
	081-831-1007	GIVE FIRST AID FOR BURNS
	081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING
	081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET
	081-831-1025	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN
		ABDOMINAL WOUND
	081-831-1033	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN HEAD
		WOUND

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
	031-503-4003	CONTROL UNIT RADIATION EXPOSURE
	081-831-1034	SPLINT A SUSPECTED FRACTURE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 HHC/HHD  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (3-3-C224)  
 (FM 3-5) (STP 21-1-SMCT)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit has conducted combat operations within an NBC contaminated area. Personnel are experiencing degraded combat effectiveness. MOPP gear is in danger of being penetrated by contamination and there is little time for planning. Time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct MOPP gear exchange and vehicle washdown. Site security is established. Replacement MOPP gear for each soldier, all organic equipment (such as NBC detection, decon, and marking materials; pioneer tools, communications equipment; vehicles and/or aircraft) and supplies, decon unit support, decon site and link up point locations have been established, and FM 3-5 are on hand/available. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates their individual gear, conducts the MOPP gear exchange (utilizing the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from NBC contamination. Limit the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment, and minimize contamination on soldiers IAW FM 3-5. Reduce radiological contamination to negligible risk levels IAW FM 3-5. Reduce chemical and biological contamination until it is safe to unmask.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Contaminated unit's leader determines extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives input from staff.</li> <li>b. Establishes priorities.</li> </ul> 2. Contaminated unit submits request for decontamination to higher headquarters. Request should, as a minimum, include--		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Designation of the contaminated unit.  b. Location of the contaminated unit.  c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit.  d. Time the unit became contaminated.  e. Number of vehicles/equipment, by type, that are contaminated.  f. Type of contamination.  g. Special requirements. (For example, patient decon station, recovery assets, unit decon team.)</p> <p>* 3. Contaminated unit coordinates with higher headquarters.  a. Obtains permission to conduct decontamination and obtain necessary support.  b. Selects link-up point to meet supporting units. (For example, company supply section, PDDE crew.)  c. Coordinates with supporting elements.  d. Requests replacement MOPP gear.  e. Coordinates with the supporting elements to see if they will conduct a MOPP gear exchange also.</p> <p>NOTE: Vehicle washdown portion of operational decon usually uses hot soapy water.</p> <p>4. The contaminated unit's leader and NBC personnel select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring the site selected provides the following:  a. Adequate overhead concealment.  b. Good drainage.  c. Easy access and exit (but off the main routes).  d. Is near a water source large enough to support the vehicle washdown.  e. Is large enough to accommodate elements involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange sites).</p> <p>5. Contaminated unit's Tactical Operations Center coordinates for operational decon support (battalion PDDE and crew or decon squad).  a. Requests operational decon support.  b. Notifies higher headquarters of the area for the operational decon.  c. Establishes communications with the decon element.  d. Ensures that the decon elements know the locations of the linkup and the selected decon site.</p> <p>6. Contaminated unit and supporting units move to decon site.  a. Meet at link up point as coordinated.  b. Contaminated unit provides security at both link up point and decon site.</p> <p>WARNING: SUPER TROPICAL BLEACH (STB) CAN SPONTANEOUSLY IGNITE IF MIXED WITH DECONTAMINATING SOLUTION 2 (DS2) OR BLISTER AGENT.</p> <p>7. Units prepare for operational decontamination.  a. Set up the decon site.  (1) Supporting PDDE crew sets up vehicle washdown site.  (2) Contaminated unit sets up MOPP gear exchange site; no less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site.  (3) The remainder of the unit prepares its equipment for decon.  b. Actions in pre-decon area.  (1) Vehicle crews (except for operators) dismount unless they have an operational overpressure system AND an uncontaminated interior.  (2) Dismounted crews remove mud and camouflage from vehicles. The contaminated unit must provide personnel to do this if crews do not dismount.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Separate vehicles and dismounted crews.</p> <p>( a) Ensure vehicle operators are briefed (include use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper interval).</p> <p>( b) Ensure vehicles are buttoned up (all doors, hatches, and other openings are closed or covered).</p> <p>(4) Move vehicles, with operators, to the vehicle washdown site.</p> <p>(5) Move dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit, to the MOPP gear exchange site.</p> <p>8. NCOIC of the decon unit supervises operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that:</p> <p>NOTE: Normally the PDDE crew runs the vehicle washdown.</p> <p>a. Vehicle commanders maintain the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</p> <p>b. Vehicles are washed properly.</p> <p>(1) Start at top and work down.</p> <p>(2) Spray hot soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicles.</p> <p>(3) Monitor water consumption.</p> <p>c. Vehicles move to assembly area after vehicle washdown.</p> <p>9. Contaminated unit conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>a. Prepares equipment decontamination station (with STB dry mix).</p> <p>b. Briefs MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed.</p> <p>c. Places decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (plastics, poncho, or other similar material).</p> <p>d. Exchanges MOPP gear.</p> <p>e. Moves soldiers to the assembly area after completion of MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>NOTE: Ensure the supporting elements have had the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange before proceeding. NOTE: The supporting PDDE crew will clean and mark the site, and report the area of contamination (using NBC 4 Report) to higher headquarters.</p> <p>10. Ensure all personnel and equipment are accounted for after the completion of the Operational Decontamination.</p> <p>11. Commander reports to higher headquarters.</p> <p>a. Completion and location of MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>b. Requests permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, the determination has been made that no agent is present.</p> <p>c. Determines the adequacy of decontamination and adjusts MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher headquarters).</p> <p>12. Continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1023	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WHEN CHANGING MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR	
	031-503-1024	REPLACE CANISTER ON YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK	
	031-503-1025	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD	
	071-329-1001	IDENTIFY TERRAIN FEATURES ON A MAP	
	071-329-1002	DETERMINE THE GRID COORDINATES OF A POINT ON A MILITARY MAP	
	071-329-1008	MEASURE DISTANCE ON A MAP	
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)	
	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS	
	551-721-1352	PERFORM VEHICLE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS)	
	STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3006	SUPERVISE RADIATION MONITORING
		031-503-3009	LEAD MOPP GEAR EXCHANGE
031-503-3010		SUPERVISE EMPLOYMENT OF NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, OR CHEMICAL MARKERS	
031-507-3003		SUPERVISE HASTY DECONTAMINATION	
071-329-1004		DETERMINE THE ELEVATION OF A POINT ON THE GROUND USING A MAP	
113-573-8006		USE AN AUTOMATED SIGNAL OPERATION INSTRUCTION (SOI)	

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 Company  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance (3-3-C225)  
 (FM 3-19)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting operations in an area where chemical warfare has been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of chemical hazards in the area of operational concern. The reconnaissance element leader receives the mission that identifies priority areas. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The reconnaissance element identifies, marks, and ensures the battalion CP knows the location of all chemical agents in the assigned reconnaissance area. The location of contamination is marked and recorded within 100 meters accuracy of actual location.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The reconnaissance element leader issues guidance to subordinate leaders.</p> <p>2. The recon unit leader begins preparations for the chemical reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performs map reconnaissance of the route and specific area for reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Determines reconnaissance technique to use.</li> <li>c. Plans for decontamination following the reconnaissance operation (if decon is necessary).</li> <li>d. Coordinates for fire support.</li> <li>e. Briefs personnel on proper reporting and recording procedures.</li> <li>f. Issues operation order/FRAGO to subordinate leaders.</li> </ul> <p>3. Recon element prepares for chemical reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepares vehicles/equipment for chemical reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Performs precombat checks on vehicles/equipment.</li> <li>c. Loads chemical agent detection equipment.</li> <li>d. Removes all external gear/equipment not needed or required for the mission.</li> <li>e. Attaches M9 paper to troops and vehicles.</li> <li>f. Covers exposed equipment with plastic or canvas.</li> <li>g. Covers internal area of vehicles for team members who dismount vehicle.</li> <li>h. Assumes appropriate MOPP level for the reconnaissance mission.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: In order to limit MOPP degradation, MOPP analysis must be used to determine a MOPP level appropriate for tactical movement to the mission start point. The platoon reconnaissance element leader determines the point at which the element assumes MOPP4.</p> <p>4. Recon element conducts the chemical reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses proper movement techniques (IAW METT-T).</li> <li>b. Uses chemical agent detection equipment and chemical agent detection paper to locate contamination around and within the designated area.</li> <li>c. Maintains 25 to 100 meters between vehicles across the axis of advance, depending on the terrain.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Stop vehicles at selected intervals or in areas with visual indication of a chemical attack to check for contamination.</li> <li>e. Checks the area for visual indications of chemical contamination---                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Dead/discolored vegetation.</li> <li>(2) Discolored soil.</li> <li>(3) Unusual liquid droplets.</li> <li>(4) Oily film on water.</li> <li>(5) Craters caused by bursting munitions.</li> <li>(6) Absence of insect life.</li> <li>(7) Dead animals/birds.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Marks contaminated area IAW OPORD/SOP instructions.</li> </ul> <p>5. Reconnaissance element leader submits NBC 4 chemical report of findings to higher headquarters.</p> <p>6. Reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance recovery operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checks personnel and vehicles for contamination.</li> <li>b. Segregates contaminated personnel and equipment (if necessary).</li> <li>c. Coordinates for operational decontamination (if necessary).</li> <li>d. Moves to the pre-selected decontamination (if necessary).</li> <li>e. Conducts operational decontamination (if necessary).</li> <li>f. Coordinates for reconstitution to include thorough decontamination (if applicable).</li> </ul> <p>7. Reconnaissance element conducts reconnaissance recovery operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves to the designated location or returns to higher headquarters for debriefing.</li> <li>b. Moves to the preselected decontamination site (if applicable).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**



- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Cross A Chemically Contaminated Area (3-3-C226)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is en route to a new location in support of combat operations. The designated route is established and cannot be bypassed without mission degradation. The unit is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area suffering no chemical agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Element leader selects a route. a. Uses NBC 5 (Chemical) report and/or recon reports to select a route. b. Selects route that minimizes exposure consistent with the mission. c. Obtains route clearance and approval.  2. Element prepares for crossing the area. a. Assumes MOPP level 4 for crossing the area. b. All drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders know route of march and/or have strip maps.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Ensures vehicles are buttoned up (mounted movement). d. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers with available material. e. Attaches M9 detector paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.  3. Element crosses the area. a. Avoids low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation. b. Conducts dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible. c. Crosses area as quickly and carefully as possible.  4. Element exits the contaminated area. a. Checks for casualties. b. Reports casualties (if applicable). c. Conducts necessary decontamination. d. Continues mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1014	IDENTIFY CHEMICAL AGENTS USING M8 DETECTOR PAPER
	071-329-1005	DETERMINE A LOCATION ON THE GROUND BY TERRAIN ASSOCIATION
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3004	SUPERVISE THE CROSSING OF A CONTAMINATED AREA
STP 3-54B1-SM	031-504-1008	USE AND MAINTAIN M8 OR M8A1 ALARM SYSTEM

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NONPERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (19-OPFOR-1001)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected routes of key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** 1. Deliver chemical agents in lowly or densely wooded areas. 2. Delay movement of enemy supplies and equipment to forward areas by disrupting command and control system. 3. Restrict enemy units' movement in rear area. 4. Channel movement to predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminate enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflict a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (5-3-C210)  
(FM 20-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is tactically deployed. The enemy has air and ground surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Camouflage resources are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small arms range. The element's location or identity can not be determined through aerial photographs, ground-surveillance radar. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures the vehicle operators use concealed routes whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features.</li> <li>b. Ensure the vehicle's track signature continues past the park location to another logical spot.</li> </ul> <p>2. Operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Utilize existing tracks.</li> <li>b. Avoid movement near terrain features that may be used as reference points by enemy ground and aerial fires, such as hilltops and road intersections.</li> <li>c. Obliterate vehicle tracks where they turn into concealed positions.</li> </ul> <p>3. Element personnel conceal vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Position under natural cover or in shadows.</li> <li>b. Position so the shape blends with surroundings.</li> <li>c. Use natural materials to break up the shape or shadow.</li> <li>d. Blend natural materials with the surrounding area.</li> <li>e. Replace cut vegetation when it withers or changes color.</li> <li>f. Use nets to create shadows.</li> <li>g. Use camouflage screening systems to enhance natural materials.</li> <li>h. Keep heat source (for example, generators, engines, and mess area) under screening systems even when using natural concealment.</li> <li>i. Cover shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies.</li> <li>j. Dig in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permits.</li> <li>k. Conceal vehicle's track signature in snow-covered terrain.</li> <li>l. Disguise vehicle and equipment to change appearance or resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. Leaders enforce camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Direct avoidance of activity that change the area's appearance or reveals the presence of military equipment.</li> <li>b. Enforce measures to maintain blackout conditions at night.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Ensure measures are taken to eliminate/ reduce noise by muffling or masking with terrain, defilade positions, or shields. d. Ensure the prompt and complete police of debris from the area.  * 5. Leaders know when OPFOR surveillance are overhead. a. Receive satellite transmissions report from higher headquarters. b. Disseminate pertinent satellite transmissions information to subordinates. c. Incorporate this information into their tactical plan.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-326-0510	REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE WHILE DISMOUNTED
	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 3 Guard Platoons  
 Company HQ  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 Company  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Maintain Operations Security (71-3-C232) (FM 20-3)  
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5)  
 (FM 34-62)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is operating where it can be detected by the enemy. The enemy can employ EW measures and air and ground reconnaissance units. The enemy can use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, and intentions. The element prevents the enemy from learning any EEFI. The element prevents the enemy from surprising its main body. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Element leader implements OPSEC protective measures. a. Ensures OPSEC measures are properly implemented. b. Ensures OPSEC is integrated in all operations and activities. c. Maintains awareness of all activities that are OPSEC sensitive.  * 2. Leaders check or perform information security measures. a. Control information on a need-to-know basis. b. Prohibit fraternization with civilians (as applicable). c. Conduct alert, deployment preparation, and loading to minimize detection.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Ensure maps contain only minimum essential information.</li> <li>e. Inspect and give briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.</li> <li>f. Sanitize all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses natural concealment and natural camouflage materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground and air observation.</li> <li>b. Moves on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>c. Covers all reflective surfaces and unit markings with non-reflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick.</li> <li>d. Covers or removes all vehicle markings.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles and crew served weapons to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures foliage is not stripped near positions.</li> <li>b. Camouflages earth berms.</li> <li>c. Ensures that camouflage nets (if used) are hung properly.</li> <li>d. Avoids crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads, where possible.</li> <li>e. Erases tracks leading into the positions.</li> <li>f. Makes sure vehicles parked in shadows are moved as shadows shift.</li> <li>g. Replaces and replenishes camouflage as needed.</li> <li>h. Avoids movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element's NCS enforces communications procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforces SOI procedures (challenge, authentication and decode, call signs, and frequencies).</li> <li>b. Enforces approved RATELO procedures.</li> <li>c. Enforces communications security procedures (short transmissions, lowest power settings possible, directional antennas, avoid transmission patterns, maintain radio silence, as directed).</li> </ul> <p>6. The element employs communications security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses SOI procedures (challenge, authentication and decode, call signs, and frequencies).</li> <li>b. Uses approved RATELO procedures.</li> <li>c. Uses communications security procedures (short transmissions, lowest power setting possible, directional antennas, avoid transmission patterns, maintain radio silence, as directed).</li> <li>d. Employs ECCM procedures for operations during jamming.</li> <li>e. Uses messenger and wire to the maximum extent.</li> <li>f. Uses visual signals IAW the unit's SOP.</li> </ul> <p>7. The element employs physical security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes observation posts.</li> <li>b. Uses counter-reconnaissance patrols.</li> <li>c. Employs stand-to procedures.</li> <li>d. Emplaces mines and obstacles.</li> <li>e. Ties in with adjacent units (coordination and fire).</li> <li>f. Uses challenge and password.</li> <li>g. Limits access into the element area.</li> <li>h. Safeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.</li> <li>i. Employs air guards.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
j. Uses noise and light discipline. k. Uses proper litter discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0801	CHALLENGE PERSONS ENTERING YOUR AREA
	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-3-C220)  
(FM 44-8) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 20-3)  
(FM 44-30) (FM 5-20) (FM 55-30)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tactically employed. Hostile aircraft have been operating in the general area. The weapons control status is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element is not detected by enemy aircraft. Time required to conduct the mission increases when performing the task in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disperses vehicles, equipment, tents, and supplies.</li> <li>b. Uses all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, dispersion, et cetera).</li> <li>c. Covers or shades reflective items, particularly windshields and optics.</li> <li>d. Constructs field fortifications for mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>e. Maintains noise, light and litter discipline.</li> <li>f. Identifies by map and ground reconnaissance likely aircraft avenues of approach, including helicopter pop-up positions.</li> <li>g. Includes air watch as part of all OP personnel duties.</li> <li>h. Assigns air sentry posts where vision of likely aircraft attack avenues of approach is limited from OPs.</li> <li>i. Mans OPs (daytime and nighttime).</li> <li>j. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms.</li> <li>k. Reports all casualties and hostile aircraft actions (PIR follow-up).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. Convoy commander briefs personnel during preparation for convoy movement.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies by map and ground reconnaissance likely aircraft attack avenues of approach, including helicopter pop-up positions, narrow valleys and other terrain features that may force the element to close-up or pinch together.</li> <li>b. Selects column intervals based on instructions, mission, terrain and so forth.</li> <li>c. Assigns an air sentry to each vehicle (Assign each air sentry a specific search sectors). Search sectors cover all likely hostile aircraft attack lanes and helicopter pop-up positions.</li> <li>d. Establishes Vehicle order of march by precedence.</li> <li>e. Reviews air attack alarms, rules of engagement, and hostile criteria.</li> <li>f. Disseminates weapons control status to all personnel.</li> <li>g. Conducts a safety and anti-fratricide briefing.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element uses passive air defense measures during preparation for convoy movement.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms.</li> <li>b. Camouflages vehicles, equipment, and personnel.</li> <li>c. Positions crew-served weapons throughout the march column.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The element uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alternates air sentry duties every hour or less if enough personnel are available.</li> <li>b. Uses air attack alarms.</li> <li>c. Identifies threat aircraft visually.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Air sentries watch for sun reflections, smoke trails, dust, and excessive tree top movement. They listen for helicopter blade noise, and aircraft engine noise.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Reports all casualties and hostile aircraft actions (PIR follow-up).</li> </ul> <p>5. The element uses passive air defense measures, when occupying or displacing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains noise, light, and camouflage discipline.</li> <li>b. Maintains the vehicle interval specified in the unit movement order as long as tactically possible when arriving at the new location.</li> <li>c. Occupies and camouflages as quickly as possible upon arrival at a new location.</li> <li>d. Establishes vehicle interval specified in the unit movement order as quickly as possible when displacing.</li> <li>e. Establishes or uses OPs and air sentry posts when preparing to displace and upon arrival at the new location.</li> <li>f. Identifies threat aircraft actions visually.</li> <li>g. Reports all casualties and aircraft actions to higher headquarters (PIR follow-up).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0804	PERFORM SURVEILLANCE WITHOUT THE AID OF ELECTRONIC DEVICES
	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

NONE:

**ELEMENT:** MP Platoon/Squad

**TASK:** Conduct Unit Deployment (19-3-10001)  
(FM 19-4) (AR 600-8-101)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon receives an order to redeploy to a designated location. The unit deployment SOP is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon has arrived in the mission area of operation with required personnel and equipment. The unit is ready to establish operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Platoon receives order for unit recall.</li> <li>* 2. Platoon leader conducts mission analysis, to include--               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determining personnel and equipment requirements.</li> <li>b. Identifying external support requirements.</li> <li>c. Reviewing intelligence for area to which unit is deploying.</li> <li>d. Conducting risk analysis.</li> <li>e. Publishing OPORD and risk management guidance.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon sergeant ensures individual preparedness of assigned/attached personnel.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts soldiers' readiness processing IAW AR 600-8-101.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission specific training.</li> <li>c. Establishes battle rosters.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. Squad leaders ensure readiness of assigned/attached personnel.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verify equipment is maintained and deployable.</li> <li>b. Verify accountability of supplies and equipment to include sensitive items.</li> <li>c. Prepares supplies and equipment for transportation IAW load plans.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. Platoon leader/sergeant coordinates transportation requirements.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with Installation Transportation Officer.</li> <li>b. Publishes manifest for assigned/attached personnel.</li> <li>c. Arranges storage of nondeployed equipment and personal property.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 6. Platoon leader/sergeant establishes rear detachment, if appropriate.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts family support activities.</li> <li>b. Publishes rear detachment roster.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. Platoon conducts unit movement.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ships equipment.</li> <li>b. Deploys personnel</li> </ol> </li> <li>8. Platoon conducts reception, staging, onward movement, and integration.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assembles assigned/attached personnel and units.</li> <li>b. Coordinates movement to assigned areas of operation.</li> <li>c. Conducts movement to area of operation.</li> <li>d. Integrates assigned/attached personnel into unit operations.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	551-721-1352	PERFORM VEHICLE PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE CHECKS AND SERVICES (PMCS)
	551-721-1358	PREPARE VEHICLE FOR MOVEMENT AND/OR SHIPMENT
	551-721-1359	DRIVE VEHICLE IN A CONVOY
	551-721-1360	DRIVE CARGO VEHICLE ON SIDE ROADS AND UNIMPROVED ROADS
	551-721-1361	DRIVE CARGO VEHICLE ON SNOW/ICE
	551-721-1366	DRIVE VEHICLE WITH AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Support Area Damage Control Operations (19-3-20001)  
(FM 100-20) (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Enemy actions or natural disasters have caused extensive damage throughout the area of operations. The local government has temporarily lost control of the population. Higher headquarters has directed the platoon to assist in evaluating the damage and clearing the area. Resources will not be expended to repair or remove materials that have no impact on mission accomplishment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Platoon provides control measures and aids the restoration of normal operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader determines the requirements upon receiving the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiates troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with company operations center for threat analysis to include terrorist and other threats.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with company operations center for rules of engagement.</li> <li>d. Locates alternative routes and replacement facilities.</li> <li>e. Coordinates for support from other MP operating in the area.</li> <li>f. Back-briefs the company commander.</li> <li>g. Issues orders to squads/teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon sergeant coordinates support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for class I, III, and V supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinates medical support and medical evacuation.</li> <li>c. Ensures adequate civil disturbance equipment is available.</li> <li>d. Conducts a precombat inspection.</li> <li>e. Ensures communications are established.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Squads/teams conduct route reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gather information about the status of routes into, out of, and around the affected area. Information includes natural defense areas, counterambush sites, and assembly locations.</li> <li>b. Determine level and extent of NBC contamination.</li> <li>c. Identify the location of critical points affected by damage.</li> <li>d. Estimate the flow of displaced civilians from the damaged area.</li> <li>e. Report information to platoon headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Squads/teams control circulation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Seal off affected areas.</li> <li>b. Prevent unauthorized vehicles and persons from entering affected area.</li> <li>c. Conduct defile operations.</li> <li>d. Use mobile patrols identify traffic problems and provide assistance.</li> <li>e. Control movement through affected area.</li> <li>f. Establish TCP to direct traffic and information flow.</li> <li>g. Establish roadblocks and checkpoints to control dislocated civilian movement and to divert dislocated civilian traffic from MSRs to other routes.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Give priority of movement to ambulances transporting wounded and to engineers clearing debris.</li> <li>i. Bring stragglers under military control. (See Task 19-3-13002, Conduct Straggler Control Operations.)</li> </ul> <p>5. Squads/teams secure critical facilities. (See Task 19-3-22004, Conduct Security of a Critical Site.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Perform mounted and dismounted patrols around the facilities.</li> <li>b. Establish access control measures.</li> <li>c. Provide internal guards for close-in protection.</li> </ul> <p>6. Squads/teams maintain law and order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stop looting and unlawful behavior IAW the rules of engagement and the use of force requirements.</li> <li>b. Use dismounted patrols in small areas when population movement is heavy.</li> <li>c. Establish fixed guard post outside likely targets for looters.</li> <li>d. Establish checkpoints and roadblocks to keep people from entering the affected areas.</li> <li>e. Screen personnel and vehicles moving through checkpoints and roadblocks for contraband.</li> <li>f. Disseminate key information such as location of first aid stations, emergency shelters, and other emergency operations.</li> <li>g. Enforce curfews.</li> <li>h. Enforce restrictive movement measures.</li> <li>i. Enforce prohibitions of vehicle use.</li> <li>j. Enforce prioritized movement.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. Platoon leader notifies higher headquarters of mission completion.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checks all personnel and equipment.</li> <li>b. Consolidates team reports.</li> <li>c. Identifies lessons learned and information received.</li> <li>d. Submits information and intelligence collected to higher headquarters for analysis.</li> <li>e. Consolidates and reorganizes the platoon upon completion of the mission.</li> <li>f. Plans for future operations.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4105	Operate A Traffic Control Post
	191-376-4106	Operate A Roadblock And A Checkpoint
	191-376-4109	Control Traffic At A Defile
	191-376-4112	PATROL A RESTRICTED AREA

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	191-376-4114	CONTROL ENTRY TO AND EXIT FROM A RESTRICTED AREA
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5611	CONDUCT THE MANEUVER OF A SQUAD
	071-332-5021	PREPARE/UPDATE ENEMY/FRIENDLY SITUATION MAP
	191-377-4200	DETERMINE AND USE TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT FOR MOUNTED MP SQUAD
	191-377-4202	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A TRAFFIC CONTROL POST
	191-377-4203	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A ROADBLOCK/CHECKPOINT
	191-377-4204	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A DEFILE
	191-379-4412	PLAN STRAGGLER CONTROL OPERATIONS
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5626	PREPARE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	071-326-5805	CONDUCT A ROUTE RECONNAISSANCE MISSION
	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Collecting Point and Holding Area Operations (19-3-31003)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An MP platoon has been tasked to establish and operate a collecting point or holding area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon establishes a central collecting point or a holding area. It correctly processes EPW/CIs, dislocated civilians, and/or US military prisoners. It also maintains complete accountability of all personnel.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures upon receipt of mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Plans for the collecting point or holding area location based on METT-TC. Chooses a location that meets the following requirements:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Close to evacuation routes.</li> <li>(2) Close to emergency medical care facilities.</li> <li>(3) Close to water sources.</li> <li>(4) Close to supply and support activities.</li> <li>(5) Away from hostile activity.</li> <li>(6) Considers existing facilities.</li> <li>(7) Ensures site is in defilade.</li> <li>(8) Ensures site is defensible.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducts a leader's reconnaissance of the designated location.</li> <li>c. Requests intelligence and threat analysis from higher headquarters to include rules of engagement and rules of interaction.</li> <li>d. Plans for guard duties.</li> <li>e. Plans for emergencies.</li> <li>f. Develops tentative plan.</li> <li>g. Issues warning order.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon sergeant coordinates support requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Confirms class I, III, IV, V, VII, and VIII supplies for friendly forces and EPWs.</li> <li>b. Confirms engineer support for construction.</li> <li>c. Confirms medical support.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for military intelligence support ( for example, interpreters and interrogators).</li> <li>e. Ensures communications are established and maintained.</li> <li>f. Ensures religious support is available for the prisoners.</li> <li>g. Inspects weapons and equipment.</li> </ul> <p>3. Platoon prepares for the construction of the collecting point or holding area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes initial security of collecting point or holding area.</li> <li>b. Establishes a dismount point.</li> <li>c. Establishes perimeter fencing.</li> <li>d. Ensures adequate shelter is present.</li> <li>e. Includes food, water, and latrine facilities.</li> <li>f. Establishes a helipad.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. Platoon leader completes the plan.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues the plan to the platoon.</li> <li>b. Back-briefs company commander on the plan.</li> </ol> <p>5. Squads/teams process arrivals into the collecting point or holding area IAW the following procedures (STRESS):</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Search: Conduct a search of all detainees when they arrive at the holding area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Search EPW/CI. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Allow EPW/CI to keep personal effects and badges of rank or nationality.</li> <li>(b) Allow EPW/CI to keep helmets, protective masks, and items for personal protection.</li> <li>(c) Confiscate weapons, documents, and items of intelligence value and turn over to MI teams.</li> <li>(d) Impound items which would make escape easier or would be detrimental to US security. Provide a receipt these items on DA Form 4137 (Evidence/Property Custody Document).</li> <li>(e) Direct wounded or injured EPWs to a medical facility.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(2) Search dislocated civilians only if situation dictates. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Confiscate only those items that would jeopardize security. Provide a receipt for these items on DA Form 4137 (Evidence/Property Custody Document)</li> <li>(b) Allow to keep personal effects and items for personal protection.</li> <li>(c) Confiscate any items of potential intelligence value.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(3) Search US military prisoners. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Confiscate weapons.</li> <li>(b) Impound any items that would be detrimental to US security.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Tag: Ensure a tag is placed on each person, document, weapon, or piece of property processed into the holding area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Use NATO approved capture tags for EPW/CI.</li> <li>(2) Use DD 629 (Receipt of Prisoners or Detained Person) and DD 497 (Confinement Order) for US military prisoners.</li> <li>(3) Use DD 551 (Record of Internment) for dislocated civilians.</li> <li>(4) Account for property using DA Form 4137 (Evidence/Property Custody Document) and give one copy to the person.</li> <li>(5) Check the tags for completeness. The minimum requirements are date/time group of capture, location of capture, the capturing unit, and the circumstance surrounding the capture.</li> <li>(6) Replace any missing tags.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Report: Report all detainees through the chain of command using records and reports IAW unit SOP.</li> <li>d. Evacuate: Coordinate for transportation from the collecting point or holding area as soon as possible.</li> <li>e. Segregate: Separate the detainees into groups as follows: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Separate EPW/CI into groups of officers, noncommissioned officers, enlisted men, and females. Keep segregated from US military prisoners and dislocated civilians.</li> <li>(2) Separate dislocated civilians into groups of families, unaccompanied males, unaccompanied females, and unaccompanied children. Keep segregated from US military prisoners and EPW/CI.</li> <li>(3) Segregate US military prisoners from EPW/CI and dislocated civilians.</li> </ol> </li> <li>f. Safeguard: Safeguard personnel while in the collecting point or holding area.</li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Provide medical aid or evacuation as required. (2) Treat all personnel humanely. (3) Provide food and water as needed. (4) Provided items for personal protection, if possible.  6. Squads/teams guard the collecting point or holding area. a. Establish interior guards for segregated holding areas. (1) Issue control instructions and strictly enforce them. (2) Do not use force as a disciplinary measure except to protect life or preserve security and control. (3) Consider EPW/CIs as fighting forces and treat them accordingly. b. Establish perimeter security. c. Operate a dismount point and restrict access to the holding area. d. Use only that level of force necessary IAW the rules of engagement and rules of interaction.  * 7. Platoon leader updates higher headquarters on status of the mission. a. Checks personnel and equipment. b. Submits information and intelligence collected to higher headquarters for analysis. c. Plans for future operations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4108	Operate A Dismount Point
	191-376-5116	PERFORM A STAND-UP SEARCH OR A FRISK (PAT-DOWN)
	191-376-5117	PERFORM A PRONE SEARCH
	191-376-5119	PERFORM A WALL SEARCH
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	191-377-4205	SUPERVISE PROCESSING OF EPW/CI AT A COLLECTING POINT OR HOLDING AREA
		REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	SUPERVISE HANDLING OF ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT AT UNIT LEVEL
	191-379-4450	

## **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

### **TASK: DISRUPT EPW/CI OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1014)**

**CONDITION:** OPFOR soldiers are captured.

**STANDARD:** OPFOR soldiers escape or retain weapons and documents of military intelligence value.1. Prevent successful search.2. Maintain unit integrity.3. Plan escape.4. Delay movement to nearest collecting point.5. Prevent safeguarding of EPWs in order to cause embarrassment to the US.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Perform Field Processing of Enemy Prisoners of War (19-3-31004)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon must process all enemy soldiers who have surrendered or have been captured within its area of operation. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon searches, tags, segregates, silences, speeds, and safeguards each EPW.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader plans for the processing mission using mission analysis and troop-leading procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notifies higher headquarters that the platoon has captured or received EPWs.</li> <li>b. Requests intelligence and threat analysis from higher headquarters to include rules of interaction.</li> <li>c. Briefs soldiers on rules of interaction and use of force restrictions.</li> <li>d. Plans for the evacuation of EPWs to a collecting point or holding area.</li> <li>e. Issues order.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon sergeant coordinates for support requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures proper accountability records are in hand.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for class I supplies for prisoners.</li> <li>c. Ensures communications are established and maintained.</li> <li>d. Confirms transportation assets.</li> <li>e. Coordinates for medical evacuation, as necessary.</li> <li>f. Requests logistical support (class I, II, IV, and VIII supplies).</li> </ul> <p>3. Platoon members field-process the EPWs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Search.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Remove all weapons and documents.</li> <li>(2) Return personal items of no military intelligence value.</li> <li>(3) Prepare a written receipt for all personal property taken from EPWs.</li> <li>(4) Report all information of potential intelligence value.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Tag. Prepare a tag for each EPW and each item of property with the following information:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Date and time of capture.</li> <li>(2) Place of capture.</li> <li>(3) Capturing unit.</li> <li>(4) Circumstances of capture.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Segregate. Segregate EPWs by rank, sex, deserters, civilians, and nationality.</li> <li>d. Silence.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Prevent EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>(2) Prevent EPWs from talking among themselves.</li> <li>(3) Prevent EPWs from planning escape.</li> <li>(4) Do not talk in front of EPWs except to issue orders and to maintain discipline.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Speed. (1) Notify higher headquarters that the platoon has EPWs. (2) Evacuate EPWs to the nearest collecting point or holding area. f. Safeguard. (1) Treat EPWs humanely. (2) Prevent abuse of EPWs. (3) Prevent reprisals against EPWs. (4) Protect EPWs against insults. (5) Protect EPWs against public curiosity. (6) Provide first aid to sick and wounded EPWs. (7) Evacuate sick and wounded EPWs through medical channels.  * 4. Platoon leader reports mission status to higher headquarters. a. Notifies the receiving unit at the collecting point or holding area of evacuation of EPWs. b. Consolidates information. c. Reports information of potential intelligence value to higher headquarters. d. Disposes of captured data and equipment IAW SOP. e. Plans for future operations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	REPORT INFORMATION OF POTENTIAL INTELLIGENCE VALUE
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101 191-379-4450	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION SUPERVISE HANDLING OF ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT AT UNIT LEVEL

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-31005)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon has captured enemy documents and equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon processes documents and equipment IAW instructions and time limits established by higher headquarters.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon tags all captured documents and equipment, annotating the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Type of document or equipment (for example, maps, photographs, rifle, or radio).</li> <li>b. Date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Place of capture (grid coordinates).</li> <li>d. Circumstances of capture.</li> <li>e. Prisoner's name (if taken from an EPW).</li> </ul> * 2. Platoon leader reports the following information to company headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Type of document or equipment.</li> <li>b. Date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Capturing unit.</li> <li>d. Place of capture (grid coordinates).</li> </ul> * 3. Platoon leader disposes of documents and equipment according to guidance from higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroys, secures, evacuates, or abandons captured equipment.</li> <li>b. Evacuates captured documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	191-377-5250	HANDLE ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
	191-379-4450	SUPERVISE HANDLING OF ENEMY PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT AT UNIT LEVEL
	301-337-6001	PROCESS CAPTURED MATERIEL

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONCEAL/DESTROY ITEMS OF TACTICAL VALUE (19-OPFOR-1015)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR soldiers surrender documents and equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempt to conceal/destroy items of tactical value.

**STANDARD:** OPFOR soldiers retain/destroy documents and equipment.1. Prevent successful capture of documents and equipment.2. Destroy documents and equipment.3. Remove identifying markings from equipment.4. Remove unit identifying insignia.5. Provide misleading information.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Operate a Field Detention Facility for US Military Prisoners (19-3-32003)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A combat support military police platoon has been directed to operate a field detention facility responsible for protecting and sustaining US military prisoners until they can be evacuated to a theater confinement facility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon sets up a field detention facility. The platoon, with proper written authorization, picks up and transports US military prisoners, detains US military prisoners, and sends US military prisoners to higher headquarters within 72 hours of arrival. The platoon protects and sustains US military prisoners. It also prevent the disruption of the facility by enemy attack.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for the set up of the facility.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinates for a location for the facility that is near the company command post for food, transportation, and supply support.</li> <li>(2) Determines the facility's size based on the number of prisoners to be detained.</li> <li>(3) Uses existing structures whenever possible. If none are available, tents may be used.</li> <li>(4) Ensures shelter is equal to that offered to other soldiers in the combat zone.</li> <li>(5) Ensures a representative of the Medical Corps inspects field-expedient facilities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Plans for prisoners.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Directs a reconnaissance of the evacuation route be conducted.</li> <li>(2) Verifies the location of the collecting point.</li> <li>(3) Briefs the escorts on actions to take.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Plans to sustain prisoners at the field detention facility.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Task organizes the platoon to provide guard duties 24-hours a day.</li> <li>(2) Ensures prisoners are segregated by status, custody grade, sex, and rank.</li> <li>(3) Coordinates for legal representatives.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Develops security plan for the field detention facility.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a thorough reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>(2) Coordinates with higher headquarters for the threat assessment.</li> <li>(3) Considers emplacement of obstacles and mines.</li> <li>(4) Plans mounted and/or dismounted screening patrols to include MWD patrols, if available.</li> <li>(5) Plans establishment of LPs/OPs for early warning.</li> <li>(6) Plans emplacement of movement sensors.</li> <li>(7) Plans placement of defensive positions.</li> <li>(8) Plans traffic control measures.</li> <li>(9) Develops overlay for defense of the field detention facility.</li> <li>(10) Develops contingency for enemy ground, air, and NBC attack.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Plans for the evacuation of prisoners within 72 hours of their arrival at the field detention facility.</li> <li>f. Briefs the platoon and issues orders.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon sergeant coordinates for support requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with higher headquarters for engineer support and construction materials to include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Barbed wire, roll.</li> <li>(2) Barbed wire, concertina.</li> <li>(3) Fence posts.</li> <li>(4) Gates and doors.</li> <li>(5) Field sanitation facilities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for the following equipment and supplies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Floodlights and spotlights (complete with wiring).</li> <li>(2) Emergency generator.</li> <li>(3) Shelter for example, tents if necessary.</li> <li>(4) Mess equipment and cleaning gear.</li> <li>(5) Water cans and/or lyster bags.</li> <li>(6) Typewriters or computers.</li> <li>(7) First aid equipment and supplies.</li> <li>(8) Clothing and bedding.</li> <li>(9) Hand restraints and leg irons.</li> <li>(10) Heating equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Coordinates for fire support, if available.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with friendly adjacent units.</li> <li>e. Coordinates for food and medical support.</li> <li>f. Ensures communications are established and maintained.</li> </ul> <p>3. Squads/teams pick up prisoners and escort them to the field detention facility.</p> <p>4. Squads/teams operate the field detention facility.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Team leader controls the operation and relieves the guards.</li> <li>b. Team members perform guard duty. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Accept sentenced soldiers on written order of a court-martial convening authority.</li> <li>(2) Verify the information on the order (name, grade, social security number, organization of prisoner, offense for which convicted, and sentenced.</li> <li>(3) Accept accused soldiers on the written order of the accused commanding officer.</li> <li>(4) Sign a receipt for each prisoner's property.</li> <li>(5) Segregate prisoners by status, custody grade, sex, and rank.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>5. Squads/teams conduct security operations for the field detention facility.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct mounted and/or dismounted security patrols.</li> <li>b. Establish LPs/OPs for early warning.</li> <li>c. Employ movement sensors.</li> <li>d. Establish defensive positions.</li> <li>e. Emplace obstacle and mines.</li> <li>f. Establish a TCP at the intersection of the MSR and facility access road. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Maintain free flow of traffic.</li> <li>(2) Screen traffic entering the access road.</li> <li>(3) Control straggler and refugees.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Maintain communications with the platoon headquarters and the field detention facility.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. Squads/teams transfer prisoners to a confinement facility as soon as possible.		
* 7. Platoon leader sends higher headquarters reports of mission status.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST
	191-376-4105	Operate A Traffic Control Post
	191-376-4112	PATROL A RESTRICTED AREA
	191-376-4114	CONTROL ENTRY TO AND EXIT FROM A RESTRICTED AREA
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-331-1000	PREPARE THE PLATOON EARLY WARNING SYSTEM AN/TRS-2 FOR OPERATION
	071-331-1002	MONITOR THE PLATOON EARLY WARNING SYSTEM AN/TRS-2
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT EPW/CI OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1014)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR soldiers are captured.

**STANDARD:** OPFOR soldiers escape or retain weapons and documents of military intelligence value.1. Prevent successful search.2. Maintain unit integrity.3. Plan escape.4. Delay movement to nearest collecting point.5. Prevent safeguarding of EPWs in order to cause embarrassment to the US.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Provide MP Support to Populace and Resource Control Operations (19-3-33001)  
(FM 41-10) (FM 100-20) (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police platoon has been directed to provide support to a civil affairs detachment or to host-nation agencies. Military police will assist in populace and resource control by enforcing control measures and providing security within an assigned area of responsibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The MP platoon enforces the control measures necessary to provide security to the local population and their resources.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader initiates troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts an estimate of the situation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a map reconnaissance of the platoon's area of operations.</li> <li>(2) Requests intelligence to include threat analysis from higher headquarters.</li> <li>(3) Requests rules of engagement and rules of interaction from higher headquarters.</li> <li>(4) Coordinates with higher headquarters for civil affairs or host-nation requirements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Issues warning order to all squads.</li> <li>c. Determines mission requirements.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Plans for the following control measures to aid populace control:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Enforcing of curfews.</li> <li>(b) Enforcing of movement restrictions.</li> <li>(c) Verifying travel permits and registration cards.</li> <li>(d) Assisting with the evacuation of noncombatants.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Plans for the following control measures to aid in resource control:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Establishing roadblocks and checkpoints.</li> <li>(b) Inspecting facilities.</li> <li>(c) Enforcing local regulations and guidelines.</li> <li>(d) Controlling rations.</li> <li>(e) Assisting with an amnesty program.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Coordinate with higher headquarters for host-nation authorities and police support available.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Assists in coordination with host-nation police for implementation of plan.</li> <li>e. Briefs the platoon and back-briefs the company commander.</li> <li>f. Issues orders.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon sergeant coordinates support requirements.</p> <p>3. Squads/teams implement populace control measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforce curfews as established by the host-nation authorities or civil affairs personnel.</li> <li>b. Restrict movement.</li> <li>c. Check travel permits.</li> <li>d. Check registration cards.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Assist with the evacuation of noncombatants. f. Treat civilian IAW the Geneva Convention and US policies.  4. Squads/teams implement resource control measures. a. Check licenses. b. Establish roadblocks and checkpoints. c. Enforce ration controls. d. Enforce local regulations or guidelines.  * 5. Platoon leader updates higher headquarters on status of the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	071-326-5505	ISSUE AN ORAL OPERATION ORDER
	191-376-4114	CONTROL ENTRY TO AND EXIT FROM A RESTRICTED AREA
	191-377-4203	ESTABLISH/SUPERVISE A ROADBLOCK/CHECKPOINT
	191-379-4402	PLAN ROADBLOCKS AND CHECKPOINTS

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Provide MP Support to Noncombatant Evacuation Operations (19-3-34001)  
(FM 41-10) (FM 19-4) (FM 27-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The Department of State, Department of Defense, or appropriate US military commander has ordered the evacuation of all noncombatant US civilians from a foreign nation. The host nation is no longer able to provide adequate protection or to conduct the evacuation. The MP platoon has been tasked to assist the evacuation in support of the civil affairs detachment responsible for noncombatant evacuation operations. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon provides security to assist with the evacuation of dislocated civilians and noncombatants IAW the Hague and Geneva conventions, US policy, and international policies.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader begins troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues a warning order.</li> <li>b. Requests intelligence from higher headquarters to include the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Screening and identification system being used.</li> <li>(2) The number of evacuees, their point of origin, and their anticipated direction of movement, and destination.</li> <li>(3) Locations of marshalling areas, collection points, or assembly areas.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Conducts a reconnaissance of the evacuation route, preferably a route reconnaissance.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies needed rest areas.</li> <li>(2) Identifies locations of other units along the route.</li> <li>(3) Coordinates with the Movement Control Center to ensure the evacuation does not interfere with the movement of US or allied forces.</li> <li>(4) Identifies critical areas or facilities along the route (such as hospitals and so forth.)</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Coordinates fire support along the route in case of hostile encounters.</li> <li>e. Determines available transport and coordinates for movement.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determines the availability of aircraft or helicopters.</li> <li>(2) Determines the availability of railways.</li> <li>(3) Determines the availability of bus transportation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Selects soldiers for the mission based on the method of transport, number of evacuees, and METT-TC considerations.</li> <li>g. Plans emergency actions in case of air attack, artillery attack, ambush, or riot during movement.</li> <li>h. Requests an interpreter.</li> <li>i. Coordinates with higher headquarters for transportation assets.</li> <li>j. Briefs platoon members on the mission with special emphasis on the Geneva and Hague Conventions and policies pertaining to evacuees.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon sergeant confirms support requirements for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for medical evacuation with higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Checks supplies and equipment.</li> <li>c. Coordinates transportation requirements.</li> <li>d. Ensures communications are established and maintained.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. Squads/teams provide security for the evacuation IAW the guidelines established by civil affairs personnel and US policy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Screen for authorized personnel to include the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Military personnel of the US armed forces specifically designated for evacuation as noncombatants.</li> <li>(2) Dependents of members of the US armed forces.</li> <li>(3) Civilian employees of all agencies of the US government and their dependents.</li> <li>(4) Private US citizens and their dependents.</li> <li>(5) Civilians employees of the US government and their dependents who are residents in the country concerned but express the willingness to be evacuated.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Brief evacuees on discipline and the actions to take during emergencies, preferably through an official interpreter. Also, provide information on force protection principles and basic safety.</li> <li>c. Provide security at the marshalling areas, evacuation sites, holding areas, or reception stations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Employ interior guards for group areas.</li> <li>(2) Establish perimeter security.</li> <li>(3) Operate a dismount point to restrict access.</li> <li>(4) Take action to protect the evacuees in the event of hostile activities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Enforce the priority of evacuation:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Personnel who require immediate medical attention always have first priority.</li> <li>(2) Group I includes US citizens, officials, dependents, tourists, business persons, and non-US family members when the father, mother, husband, or wife is a US citizen.</li> <li>(3) Group II includes foreign nationals holding diplomatic papers, visas, or passports who received Department of State approval.</li> <li>(4) Group III includes all others, to include host-nation citizens, who do not fit into the first two categories.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Provide security during movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Use escort vehicles and send a scout vehicle ahead, if possible.</li> <li>(2) Maintain communications with headquarters and report critical information such as hostile actions or any activity that interferes with the evacuation.</li> <li>(3) Take action to safeguard and secure evacuees in the event of air attack or ambush.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 4. Platoon leader updates higher headquarters on mission status.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Evacuation Operations (19-3-35001)  
(FM 41-10) (FM 19-4) (FM 27-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Dislocated civilians, EPW/CI, and/or US military prisoners are in custody at a collecting point or holding area and must be evacuated to the next echelon control site. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon handles evacuees with 100% accountability and complies with the Hague and Geneva Conventions, US policy, and military law.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Platoon leader begins troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues a warning order.</li> <li>b. Begins movement and reconnoiter.</li> <li>c. Conducts a reconnaissance of the evacuation route. At a minimum, conducts a map reconnaissance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies needed rest areas.</li> <li>(2) Identifies locations of the other units along the route.</li> <li>(3) Identifies restrictions along the route.</li> <li>(4) Coordinates with the Movement Control Center to ensure the evacuation does not interfere with tactical movement of US allied forces.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Develops a plan considering the following:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Coordinates for medical evacuation of seriously wounded, ill, or injured personnel.</li> <li>(2) Coordinates fire support along the route in case of enemy contact.</li> <li>(3) Coordinates available transport for evacuee movement considering the following:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Backhaul transportation.</li> <li>(b) Use of aircraft or helicopters.</li> <li>(c) Use of railways.</li> <li>(d) Use of organic assets.</li> <li>(e) Movement by foot.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(4) Plans emergency actions in case of air attack, ambush, riot, or escape during movement.</li> <li>(5) Coordinates with the MP company commander for guard and transportation assets.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Selects soldiers for the mission based on the method of transport, number of evacuees being evacuated, and METT-TC considerations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provides at least two guards per aircraft, helicopter, and rail boxcar.</li> <li>(2) Provides at least four guards per rail passenger car.</li> <li>(3) Provides one guard in the cab of each motor vehicle used for evacuation and/or a trailing security vehicle with automatic weapons capabilities.</li> <li>(4) Provides guards at the head, rear, and both flanks of a close column formation if moving by foot.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Briefs platoon members on the mission with special emphasis on the Geneva and Hague Conventions and policies pertaining to US military prisoners.</li> <li>g. Back-briefs higher headquarters on the plan.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon sergeant coordinates for support requirements for the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures class I, III, V, VII, and VIII supplies are on hand.</li> <li>b. Confirms evacuees have class I supplies available.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for medical evacuation with higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Ensures evacuees are protected against artillery and NBC threats.</li> <li>e. Conducts a precombat check of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Confirms transportation requirements.</li> <li>g. Confirms SOI information with receiving unit (frequencies, call signs, and challenge and passwords).</li> <li>h. Ensures communications are established and maintained with the receiving unit.</li> </ul> <p>3. Squads/teams conduct evacuation operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evacuate EPW/CIs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Search prisoners thoroughly.</li> <li>(2) Obtain an accurate count.</li> <li>(3) Segregate into groups of officers, noncommissioned officers, enlisted men, and females. Keep separate areas for US military prisoners and dislocated civilians.</li> <li>(4) Check each enemy prisoners or internee for documentation.</li> <li>(5) Prepare a capture tag for EPW/CI who does not have one.</li> <li>(6) Provide food and water.</li> <li>(7) Provide medical aid or evacuation as needed.</li> <li>(8) Ensure the silence and segregation of prisoners.</li> <li>(9) Treat IAW the Hague and Geneva Conventions.</li> <li>(10) Provide security during movement and at rest stops.</li> <li>(11) Take action to safeguard and secure evacuees in the event of air attack, ambush, or attempted escape.</li> <li>(12) Transfer EPW/CI documentation including personal equipment.</li> <li>(13) Restrain only if necessary.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Evacuate dislocated civilians. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Obtain an accurate count.</li> <li>(2) Segregate into groups of families, unaccompanied males, unaccompanied females, and unaccompanied children. Keep separate from EPW/CIs and US military prisoners.</li> <li>(3) Search if the situation dictates and confiscate only those items that would jeopardize security.</li> <li>(4) Provide medical aid or evacuation as required.</li> <li>(5) Provide food and water.</li> <li>(6) Provide security during movement and at rest stops.</li> <li>(7) Take action to safeguard and secure evacuees in the event of air attack, ambush, or attempted escape.</li> <li>(8) Brief evacuees on discipline, actions to take during emergencies, and the meaning of the word "halt," preferably through the use of an official interpreter.</li> <li>(9) Release evacuees and their personal property to receiving MP on DD Form 629 (Receipt for Prisoner or Detained Person).</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Evacuate US military prisoners. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Search prisoners thoroughly.</li> <li>(2) Obtain an accurate prisoner count.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Ensure US military prisoners are prevented from having immediate association with EPW/CI or dislocated civilians. (4) Treat US military prisoners IAW military law. (5) Provide security during movement and at rest stops. (6) Takes action to safeguard and secure evacuees in the event of air attack, ambush or attempted escape. (7) Release evacuees to receiving MP or DD Form 629 ( Receipt for Prisoner or Detained Person) and include personal property. * 4. Platoon leader updates higher headquarters on status of the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4101	Process EPW/CI At A Collecting Point Or Holding Area
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	191-376-4102	Escort EPW/CI To Rear Areas
	191-377-4205	SUPERVISE PROCESSING OF EPW/CI AT A COLLECTING POINT OR HOLDING AREA
	191-378-6079	SUPERVISE TRANSFER OF EPW/CI TO COLLECTING POINT/HOLDING AREA/ENCLOSURE
STP 21-1-SMCT	191-379-4405	PLAN MOVEMENT OF EPW/CI
STP 21-24-SMCT	113-571-1022	PERFORM VOICE COMMUNICATIONS
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** DISRUPT EPW/CI OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1014)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR soldiers are captured.

**STANDARD:** OPFOR soldiers escape or retain weapons and documents of military intelligence value.1. Prevent successful search.2. Maintain unit integrity.3. Plan escape.4. Delay movement to nearest collecting point.5. Prevent safeguarding of EPWs in order to cause embarrassment to the US.

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Perform Platoon-Level Law and Order Operations (19-3-40001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A combat support military police company has been directed to conduct law and order operations in support of stability, support, defensive or offensive operations. The platoon is established in an area of operations with specific missions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon distributes MP assets to conduct law and order operations in accordance with the plan developed by the company operations cell, in conjunction with other missions, and based on the tactical environment. The platoon performs operations to include traffic enforcement, crime prevention, physical security, antiterrorism measures, and investigations. Major incidents are referred to USACIDC for investigation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader begins troop-leading procedures upon receipt of the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines equipment and personnel requirements for the mission.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for the rules of engagement and the use of force criteria.</li> <li>c. Conducts a reconnaissance of the area of responsibility. At a minimum, conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Issues warning order.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon leader makes a tentative plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Bases plan on considerations of METT-TC.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for threat information and analysis.</li> <li>c. Develops patrol distribution plan based on instructions from the analysis from the company operations center in conjunction with ongoing missions.</li> <li>d. Develops communications plan with the company.</li> <li>e. Requests interpreter support, if needed.</li> <li>f. Coordinates with higher headquarters for host-nation support and assistance.</li> <li>g. Coordinates with higher headquarters for other military organizations within their area of responsibility.</li> <li>h. Coordinates with higher headquarters for the availability of civil affairs and PSYOP teams available in the event of a civil disturbance operation. (See Conduct Platoon-Level Civil Disturbance Control Operations, 19-3-40003.)</li> <li>i. Coordinates with higher headquarters for availability, if needed, of STRESS teams at the nearest medical facility in the event of stress-related soldier issues.</li> <li>j. Coordinate for locations of dislocated civilian and straggler collection points.</li> <li>k. Coordinate for investigative support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Platoon sergeant coordinates for logistical and administrative support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sets up the MP desk.</li> <li>b. Ensures sufficient supplies of the appropriate military forms and documents are available.</li> <li>c. Establishes communications with higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Monitors quality of life issues to include work, mail, and shower schedules.                      e. Coordinates with higher headquarters for class I, III, V, VIII, and IX supplies.                      f. Ensures appropriate level of civil disturbance gear is on hand to include shields, body armor, and CS, CR, and pepper spray.</p> <p>* 4. Platoon leader and squad leader conduct a ground or aerial reconnaissance of areas where law and order operations will be conducted including the site of the MP desk.</p> <p>* 5. Platoon leader completes the plan.                      a. Coordinates with host-nation personnel for support requirements.                      b. Determines any logistical requirements not previously identified.                      c. Completes the OPORD.                      d. Issues the OPORD using sketches and terrain models, if available.</p> <p>* 6. Platoon leader/platoon sergeant conduct inspections and rehearsals in preparation for conducting the mission.                      a. Inspect weapons and ammunition.                      b. Inspect uniforms and equipment.                      c. Inspect communications.                      d. Inspect rations and water.                      e. Ensure rules of interaction and use of force cards are provided to each soldier.                      f. Supervise rehearsals for the following:                      (1) Contact with dislocated civilians, straggler, and EPWs.                      (2) Civil disturbance operations.                      (3) Sample scenarios in which the rules of engagement and use of force rules are applied.                      (4) Handling persons committing crimes against the United States.                      (5) Body and building searches.                      (6) Apprehension procedures.</p> <p>7. Platoon performs law and order operations.                      a. Conducts traffic enforcement, crime prevention, antiterrorism measures, physical security measures, and investigations of crimes as the tactical situation permits.                      b. Refers serious crimes such as crimes against the United States, political crimes, and war crimes to the USACIDC for investigation.                      c. Forwards spot reports and completed MP paperwork to the company operations center.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-311I-MQS	191-376-5117	PERFORM A PRONE SEARCH

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-5101	GATHER, RECORD, AND REPORT POLICE INFORMATION
	191-376-5105	SECURE OFFENDER WITH HAND IRONS
	191-376-5110	ENFORCE TRAFFIC REGULATIONS
	191-376-5112	APPREHEND A SUBJECT
	191-376-5114	DETERMINE IF A SEARCH AND SEIZURE IS AUTHORIZED
	191-376-5115	SELECT TYPE OF BODY SEARCH TO PERFORM
	191-376-5116	PERFORM A STAND-UP SEARCH OR A FRISK (PAT-DOWN)
	191-376-5119	PERFORM A WALL SEARCH
	191-376-5121	SEARCH A BUILDING
	191-376-5122	SEARCH A VEHICLE
	191-376-5123	TRANSPORT OFFENDERS
	191-376-5124	IDENTIFY EVIDENCE/CONTRABAND
	191-376-5125	COLLECT AND PROCESS EVIDENCE
	191-376-5126	CONDUCT INTERVIEWS
	191-376-5128	PROTECT A CRIME SCENE
	191-376-5129	PROCEED TO AND SECURE THE SCENE OF A TRAFFIC ACCIDENT
	191-376-5138	PREPARE DA FORM 4137 (EVIDENCE/PROPERTY CUSTODY DOCUMENT)
	191-377-5205	PREPARE A MILITARY POLICE DESK BLOTTER (DA FORM 3997)
	191-377-5206	PREPARE AND MAINTAIN DESK REFERENCE CARDS (DA FORM 3998)
	191-377-5207	PROCESS OFFENDERS
191-380-0109	PLAN PATROL ACTIVITIES	
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	051-191-2364	Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions
	071-410-0010	CONDUCT A LEADER'S RECONNAISSANCE

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** Platoon HQ  
 3 Guard Platoons  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Platoon/Squad

**TASK:** Conduct Platoon-Level Civil Disturbance Control Operations (19-3-40003)  
 (FM 19-15) (FM 19-4) (FM 90-40)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A combat support military police platoon has been directed to respond to demonstrations at a military installation or in support of civil authorities as part of stability, support, offensive, or defensive operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon conducts operations to disperse or contain the crowd or block it from penetrating an area. Military police act within the guidelines of the ROE and other special orders.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Platoon leader receives the mission and issues a warning order.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiates troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>b. Receives guidance from higher headquarters concerning--                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Mission and threat.</li> <li>(2) ROE and use of force.</li> <li>(3) Legal guidance such as the Posse Comitatus Act.</li> <li>(4) Special personnel and equipment requirements (the presence of VIPs, critical facilities, and so forth).</li> <li>(5) Nonlethal methods and capabilities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Develops a communications plan with company headquarters and within the platoon.</li> <li>d. Reviews SOPs concerning authorization for riot control agents and pepper spray.</li> <li>e. Conducts a thorough reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>f. Identifies personnel requirements for the mission.</li> <li>g. Issues a warning order to the platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Platoon sergeant requests equipment to support the mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Includes the following equipment:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Kevlar with face shield.</li> <li>(2) Body armor/flak vest.</li> <li>(3) Shield, work gloves, baton.</li> <li>(4) Protective mask.</li> <li>(5) Shin guards.</li> <li>(6) Elbow pad.</li> <li>(7) Weapons and bayonets.</li> <li>(8) CS, CR, and pepper spray.</li> <li>(9) Smoke grenades.</li> <li>(10) LBE and water.</li> <li>(11) Nonlethal weapons and munitions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Includes restraint materials and equipment:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Hand and leg irons.</li> <li>(2) Flex cuffs.</li> <li>(3) Duct tape.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Mouth restraints.</p> <p>c. Includes additional soldier support requirements:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Medical assistance.</li> <li>(2) Class I, III, IV, and V supplies, as needed.</li> <li>(3) Medical evacuation for soldiers and rioters/demonstrators.</li> </ol> <p>d. Includes other equipment, as necessary:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Breaching ramps.</li> <li>(2) Scaling ladders.</li> <li>(3) Portable radios.</li> <li>(4) Bullhorns.</li> <li>(5) VHS cameras (to identify individuals in the crowd).</li> <li>(6) Armored trucks.</li> <li>(7) Transport vehicles (for transportation to detention cells or areas).</li> <li>(8) Night-vision devices.</li> <li>(9) Portable lighting.</li> </ol> <p>* 3. Platoon leader makes tentative plan and begins movement.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with other military units. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) SRT and hostage negotiations for special threat situations.</li> <li>(2) MWD teams for bomb detection and/or show of force.</li> <li>(3) PSYOP and civil affairs.</li> <li>(4) Public Affairs to handle media and press relations.</li> <li>(5) EOD.</li> <li>(6) Staff Judge Advocate for legal issues.</li> <li>(7) Installation personnel.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Coordinates with local or host-nation law enforcement personnel.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for the actual conduct of the operation concerning-- <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Transportation from civil disturbance locations to a detention facility.</li> <li>(2) Medical assistance and support.</li> <li>(3) Field booking teams with local and host-nation law enforcement and legal teams.</li> <li>(4) Public affairs support.</li> <li>(5) Language barriers using interpreters as needed.</li> <li>(6) Directs platoon to move.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>* 4. Platoon leader completes the plan.</p> <p>* 5. Platoon leader briefs the platoon on the completed plan.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefs soldiers on the restrictions of the rules of engagement and the use of force. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Soldiers must know how to use only the minimum force required to control the situation: verbal persuasion, unarmed self-defense, chemical irritants, MP club, military working dog, or deadly force.</li> <li>(2) Soldiers must know the nonlethal methods and capabilities that are available.</li> <li>(3) Soldiers must know under what conditions deadly force is authorized.</li> <li>(4) Soldiers must understand the importance of individual restraint and discipline in dealing with crowds.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Briefs soldiers concerning what to expect when dealing with crowds. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Crowd dynamics.</li> <li>(2) Crowd behavior.</li> <li>(3) Crowd makeup.</li> <li>(4) Crowd-control tactics.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>* 6. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant conduct inspections and rehearsals for the operation.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Check for appropriate soldier equipment.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Inspect civil disturbance gear available.</li> <li>(2) Inspect protective masks.</li> <li>(3) Inspect water and rations.</li> <li>(4) Inspect appropriate weapons for possible situations.</li> </ol> <p>b. Conduct rehearsals to meet and counter threat.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Includes the employment and use of nonlethal munitions.</li> <li>(2) Uses sample scenarios to cover situations in which the rules of engagement and use of force guidelines are applied.</li> <li>(3) Uses the M36 riot dispenser.</li> <li>(4) Uses voice commands and hand and arm signals.</li> <li>(5) Uses the line, wedge, and echelon formations.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. Platoon leader/squad leader employ personnel and equipment based on mission, threat, and commander's guidance.</p> <p>a. Use appropriate crowd control formations as the situation dictates.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Line formation (skirmishers).</li> <li>(2) Wedge formation ( to break up skirmishers).</li> <li>(3) Echelon formation (to move skirmishers in a desired direction).</li> <li>(4) Circle or diamond formation (to move through a crowd or to move a VIP).</li> </ol> <p>b. Employ special teams as required.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Selected marksmen.</li> <li>(2) Personnel armed with shotguns.</li> <li>(3) Nonlethal weapons.</li> <li>(4) Riot control dispenser operators.</li> <li>(5) Snatch teams.</li> <li>(6) Aid-n-litter teams.</li> </ol> <p>c. Oversee the emplacement of barriers.</p> <p>d. Coordinate with Public Affairs, PSYOP, interpreters, and MWD teams during the operation.</p> <p>* 8. Platoon leader/squad leader direct the crowd-control forces.</p> <p>a. Maintain disciplines among soldiers.</p> <p>b. Direct use of marksmen, shotguns, and riot control agents or pepper spray in strict adherence to ROE.</p> <p>c. React to special threats (such as bombings, snipers, or hostage situations).</p> <p>d. Request support from the company as required.</p> <p>9. Platoon/squad disperses, contains, or blocks the crowd.</p> <p>a. Soldiers successfully disperse, contain or block the crowd as the mission dictates.</p> <p>b. Soldiers use only the minimum level of force necessary to control the situation.</p> <p>c. Soldiers maintain discipline at all times.</p> <p>d. Soldiers' apprehend/detain law violators as the situation dictates.</p> <p>*10. Platoon leader and platoon sergeant consolidate and reorganize the platoon following civil disturbance operations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check sensitive items.</li> <li>b. Check for casualties.</li> <li>c. Replace key letters if necessary.</li> <li>d. Request support from the company for lost or damaged items.</li> <li>e. Prepare the future operations.</li> </ol>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
f. Coordinate with company headquarters for the disposition of detained personnel and evidence. Also, coordinate for casualty evacuation of wounded soldiers.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 19-95B1-rev-SM	191-376-4119	MAINTAIN AND OPERATE RIOT CONTROL AGENT DISPERSERS (M33A1/M36)
	191-376-4121	USE A RIOT BATON
	191-376-4122	POSITION YOURSELF IN RIOT CONTROL FORMATIONS
	191-376-5103	USE UNARMED SELF-DEFENSE TECHNIQUES
	191-376-5104	USE MP CLUB TO SUBDUE A SUSPECT
	191-376-5105	SECURE OFFENDER WITH HAND IRONS
	191-376-5106	DETERMINE THE LEVEL OF FORCE REQUIRED
STP 19-95B24-SM-TG	191-379-5400	CONDUCT PLATOON RIOT CONTROL FORMATIONS
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-430-0007	CONSOLIDATE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	071-430-0008	REORGANIZE A PLATOON FOLLOWING ENEMY CONTACT WHILE IN THE DEFENSE
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**



**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
 Company  
 Platoon HQ  
 Division PM Operations Section

**TASK:** Occupy Assembly Area (7-3-C228)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been given the order to move and occupy an assembly area in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party completes assembly area preparations and guides the element's main body into their respective positions NLT the time specified in the OPORD. Movement into the assembly area is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the assembly area. The element's main body is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select quartering party personnel.</li> <li>b. Determine requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements.</li> <li>c. Determine essential equipment needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify the location of the assembly area.</li> <li>b. Give specific instructions upon arrival at assembly area.</li> <li>c. State time of main body's arrival at the assembly area.</li> <li>d. Identify order of march.</li> <li>e. State NBC conditions.</li> <li>f. Issue a contingency plan in case of enemy contact.</li> <li>g. Establish MOPP level.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The element quartering party moves along the route of march.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintain security.</li> <li>b. Reconnoiter the route of march from SP to RP.</li> <li>c. Monitor for NBC contamination.</li> <li>d. Mark obstacles and bypass routes.</li> <li>e. Report critical information to the element quartering party leader.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The quartering party moves into the element assembly area and prepares the area for the element's arrival.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select and mark routes from the RP to the new location.</li> <li>b. Select and post guides in time to meet the main body.</li> <li>c. Mark entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>d. Mark vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provides 360- degree security.</li> <li>e. Mark or remove mines and obstacles.</li> <li>f. Organize and post local security.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. Element occupies assembly area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Move quartering party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) to guide element to selected or designated areas without halting.</li> <li>b. Establish and maintain local security from air and ground forces.</li> </ol> <p>6. The element establishes the assembly area's perimeter.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establish the priority of work (may vary by unit SOP and METT-T).</li> <li>b. Position vehicles/crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire.</li> <li>c. Establish OPs on critical avenues of approach.</li> <li>d. Establish communications between all positions. (Use wire communications if time /situation permits.)</li> <li>e. Prepare range cards.</li> <li>f. Construct individual and crew-served fighting positions.</li> <li>g. Clear fields of fire.</li> <li>h. Camouflage positions.</li> <li>i. Emplace the chemical agent alarms and the early warning devices.</li> </ol> <p>7. The element performs internal operation of the assembly area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services on vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>b. Distribute ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment.</li> <li>c. Establish personal hygiene and field sanitation site.</li> <li>d. Maintain noise, light, and camouflage discipline.</li> <li>e. Institute rest plan for element members and leaders.</li> <li>f. Inspect assembly area.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates, as a minimum, with the element on the left and the right.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establish responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements.</li> <li>b. Exchange information on OP locations and element's signals.</li> <li>c. Coordinate local counterattacks.</li> <li>d. Develop a defensive plan and forward to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> <p>9. Leaders develop contingency plans.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Develop evacuation plan.</li> <li>b. Develop plan of action on enemy contact.</li> </ol> <p>10. Unit conducts rehearsals.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Rehearse evacuation plan.</li> <li>b. Rehearse actions on enemy contact.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-326-0503	MOVE OVER, THROUGH, OR AROUND OBSTACLES (EXCEPT MINEFIELDS)
	071-326-0513	SELECT TEMPORARY FIGHTING POSITIONS
	071-326-5703	CONSTRUCT INDIVIDUAL FIGHTING POSITIONS
	071-331-0815	PRACTICE NOISE, LIGHT, AND LITTER DISCIPLINE
	071-331-0852	CLEAR A FIELD OF FIRE
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-0515	SELECT A MOVEMENT ROUTE USING A MAP
	071-326-5704	SUPERVISE CONSTRUCTION OF A FIGHTING POSITION
	071-326-5705	ESTABLISH AN OBSERVATION POST
	071-326-5775	COORDINATE WITH AN ADJACENT PLATOON
	071-329-1006	NAVIGATE FROM ONE POINT ON THE GROUND TO ANOTHER POINT WHILE DISMOUNTED

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP PLATOON/SQUAD  
 MP PLATOON HQ  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Treat Casualties (8-3-0003)

(FM 21-11)	(AR 350-41)	(AR 600-8-1)
(FM 3-4)	(FM 3-5)	(FM 8-10)
(FM 8-10-6)	(FM 8-10-7)	(FM 8-230)
(FM 8-285)	(FM 8-55)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit has sustained casualties. The unit has no organic medical personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Soldiers have been wounded and some may have chemical contamination or non-battle injuries. Some unit members have been assigned the additional duty of lifesavers. Unit members are performing first aid (self-aid/buddy aid) treatment and combat lifesavers are providing enhanced first aid treatment until medical treatment personnel arrive. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. Higher HQ TSOP and OPORD are available. SCPE is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. NOTE: This task should not be trained in MOPP4 except when treating NBC casualties. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit members provide treatment for casualties IAW FM 21-11, FM 8-285, and combat lifesaver certification standards. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to provide treatment and limits the type of treatment provided.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Commander and leaders supervise first aid treatment of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Develop treatment plan.</li> <li>b. Monitor treatment for compliance with FM 21-11 and to ensure all casualties are treated.</li> <li>c. Direct employment of combat lifesavers to treat casualties.</li> <li>d. Report casualties, as required.</li> <li>e. Coordinate replenishment of class VIII supplies with higher HQ logistics element IAW the TSOP.</li> <li>f. Direct distribution of class VIII supplies and equipment IAW the TSOP.</li> <li>g. Enforce QC procedures for class VIII items issued to unit elements.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit personnel survey casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check for responsiveness.</li> <li>b. Check for breathing.</li> <li>c. Check for bleeding.</li> <li>d. Check for head injury.</li> <li>e. Check for shock.</li> <li>f. Check for fractures, to include cervical spine and back fractures.</li> <li>g. Check for burns.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel administer lifesaving treatment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Clear all objects from throat of casualty.</li> <li>b. Use jaw thrust method to open airway if cervical spine injury is suspected.</li> <li>c. Perform mouth-to-mouth resuscitation IAW CPR procedures until casualty is breathing.</li> </ul> <p>4. Unit personnel control hemorrhage.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Apply dressing and bandages.</li> <li>b. Apply manual direct pressure to wound.</li> <li>c. Elevate extremities.</li> <li>d. Apply pressure dressing to wound.</li> <li>e. Apply tourniquet as last resort.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit personnel dress wounds.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Apply dressing to an open chest wound, if possible.</li> <li>b. Apply dressing to an open abdominal wound.</li> <li>c. Apply dressing to an open head wound.</li> </ul> <p>6. Unit personnel splint suspected fractures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employ available materials to splint injury.</li> <li>b. Splint fracture in position found.</li> <li>c. Restrict movement of extremities.</li> <li>d. Check circulation for impairment.</li> </ul> <p>7. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment to casualties with burns.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Extinguish thermal burn agent(s).</li> <li>b. Remove chemical burn agent(s).</li> <li>c. Eliminate electrical burn source.</li> <li>d. Uncover burn unless stuck to clothes or a chemical environment exists.</li> <li>e. Apply field dressing, if appropriate.</li> </ul> <p>8. Unit personnel treat environmental injuries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Administer treatment for heat injuries.</li> <li>b. Administer first aid for frostbite.</li> </ul> <p>9. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for chemical casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Take immediate protective steps to protect self and warn others IAW FM 8-285.</li> <li>b. Protect casualties from further contamination.</li> <li>c. Administer nerve agent antidote IAW and FM 8-285..</li> <li>d. Administer CANA, if required.</li> <li>e. Decontaminate casualties IAW FM 8-285, if necessary.</li> </ul> <p>10. Unit personnel prevent shock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Position casualties in the correct anti- shock position IAW FM 21-11.</li> <li>b. Loosen clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Prevent casualties from chilling or overheating.</li> <li>d. Calm casualties by reassuring them.</li> </ul> <p>11. Company Combat Lifesavers perform advanced treatment needed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluate casualties for condition and type treatment needed.</li> <li>b. Measure casualty's vital signs.</li> <li>c. Insert oropharyngeal airway in an unconscious casualty.</li> <li>d. Apply splint to a fractured limb.</li> <li>e. Administer first aid to chemical agent casualties.</li> <li>f. Initiate an intravenous infusion for hypovolemic shock.</li> <li>g. Identify environmental injuries.</li> <li>h. Treat environmental injuries.</li> <li>i. Manage BF casualties.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1000	EVALUATE A CASUALTY
	081-831-1003	CLEAR AN OBJECT FROM THE THROAT OF A CONSCIOUS CASUALTY
	081-831-1005	PREVENT SHOCK
	081-831-1007	GIVE FIRST AID FOR BURNS
	081-831-1008	GIVE FIRST AID FOR HEAT INJURIES
	081-831-1009	GIVE FIRST AID FOR FROSTBITE
	081-831-1016	PUT ON A FIELD OR PRESSURE DRESSING
	081-831-1017	PUT ON A TOURNIQUET
	081-831-1025	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND
	081-831-1026	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN CHEST WOUND
	081-831-1031	ADMINISTER FIRST AID TO A NERVE AGENT CASUALTY (BUDDY-AID)
	081-831-1033	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN HEAD WOUND
	081-831-1034	SPLINT A SUSPECTED FRACTURE
	081-831-1042	PERFORM MOUTH-TO-MOUTH RESUSCITATION
STP 21-24-SMCT	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES
	081-831-1025	APPLY A DRESSING TO AN OPEN ABDOMINAL WOUND
STP 21-I-MQS	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES
	04-8310.00-3007	Evaluate a Casualty
	04-8310.00-3008	Clear an Object from the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
	04-8310.00-3009	Perform Mouth-to-Mouth Resuscitation
	04-8310.00-3010	Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing
	04-8310.00-3011	Put on a Tourniquet
	04-8310.00-3012	Prevent Shock
	04-8310.00-3013	Splint a Suspected Fracture
	04-8310.00-3014	Give First Aid for Burns
	04-8310.00-3016	Administer First Aid to a Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid)
	04-8310.00-3018	Give First Aid for Frostbite
	04-8310.00-3020	Give First Aid for Heat Injuries
	04-8310.00-3024	Apply a Dressing to an Open Chest Wound
04-8310.00-3025	Apply a Dressing to an Open Head Wound	
04-8310.00-3026	Apply a Dressing to an Open Abdominal Wound	

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 Desk Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion HQ  
 Battalion  
 S2 Section  
 S1 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)

- TASK:** Transport Casualties (8-3-C316)  
 (FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (AR 600-8-1) (FM 100-5) (FM 12-6)  
 (FM 21-11) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)  
 (FM 57-38) (FM 8-10) (FM 8-285)  
 (FM 8-55)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded EPW casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The TSOP and higher HQ OPORD are available. SCPE is on hand and/or field expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are transported as soon as tactical situation permits IAW the TSOP, OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Conventions, and FM 8-10-6. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increases the time required to transport casualties.



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. * Commander and leader supervise transport of casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify casualty collection points.</li> <li>b. Identify transport requirements.</li> <li>c. Supervise preparation of casualties for transport.</li> <li>d. Coordinate transport of casualties from unit area with higher HQ PERS element IAW FM 8-10-6 and TSOP.</li> <li>e. Coordinate security requirements for the pick-up site with subelements and higher HQ OPS element.</li> <li>f. Disseminate transport information to unit personnel.</li> <li>g. Forward casualty feeder report and witness statements to higher HQ personnel element IAW FM 12-6 and TSOP.</li> </ol> <p>2. Unit personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provide first aid treatment to casualties.</li> </ol> <p>NOTE: See Task 8-2-0003 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Report casualties, as required.</li> <li>c. Collect classified document such as SOI/SSI, maps, overlays, and key lists.</li> <li>d. Secure custody of organizational equipment IAW TSOP.</li> <li>e. Forward casualty feeder reports to unit HQ IAW TSOP.</li> </ol> <p>3. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carriers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select type of manual carry appropriate to situation and injury.</li> <li>b. Transport casualty without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify litter team(s).</li> <li>b. Construct improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>c. Secure casualty on litter.</li> <li>d. Transport casualty without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>5. Unit personnel transport casualties to an MTF using available vehicles.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Load maximum number of casualties IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Secure casualties in vehicle.</li> <li>c. Transport casualties without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. Commander and leaders request aeromedical evacuation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmit request IAW FM 8-10-6, OPROD, and TSOP.</li> <li>b. Select landing site, which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off IAW FM 8-10-6 and FM 57-38.</li> <li>c. Supervise removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about prior to aircraft arrival.</li> <li>d. Supervise security of landing site.</li> </ol> <p>7. Unit personnel assist in loading ambulance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employ proper carrying and loading techniques IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Load casualties in the sequence directed by crew.</li> <li>c. Load casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</li> <li>d. Employ safety procedures IAW AR 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and TSOP.</li> <li>e. Employ environmental protection procedures IAW AR 200-1 and TSOP.</li> </ol> <p>8. Unit personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assume MOPP 4.</li> <li>b. Mark contaminated casualties IAW the TSOP.</li> </ol>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
c. Notify supporting MTFD that contaminated casualty are en route to their location. d. Transport casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station. e. Protect casualties from further contamination during transport.  9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties. a. Maintain security of EPW casualties IAW TSOP. b. Search EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance prior to evacuation. c. Transport EPW casualties IAW provisions of the Geneva Conventions and the TSOP.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 19-95D24-SM-TG	031-503-1012	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1004	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M17-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1012	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M24 OR M25-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
	031-503-1025	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M40-SERIES PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	031-503-1028	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL INJURY/CONTAMINATION USING YOUR M42 PROTECTIVE MASK WITH HOOD
	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	081-831-1040	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A ONE-MAN CARRY

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
	081-831-1041	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A TWO-MAN CARRY OR AN IMPROVISED LITTER
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	REQUEST MEDICAL EVACUATION
	081-831-1041	TRANSPORT A CASUALTY USING A TWO-MAN CARRY OR AN IMPROVISED LITTER
STP 21-I-MQS	121-030-3534	REPORT CASUALTIES
	04-8310.00-3027	Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry
	04-8310.00-3028	Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-C214)  
(FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)  
(FM 24-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tactically deployed, and must establish the communications networks. Operators have been briefed and issued SOI/SSI extracts, numerical cipher, authenticated system, operations codes and brevity lists. Situational hazards such as NBC conditions, OPFOR EW, and directional finding ability exists. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the OPORD/OPLAN. The net is not compromised. Time required to establish and operate increases when performing this task in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The radio operator installs radio set for operation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secures radios in mount.</li> <li>b. Connects audio accessories.</li> <li>c. Installs antennas.</li> <li>d. Performs before operation PMCS.</li> <li>e. Performs operational checks for radios.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Radio operator makes initial entry into the nets.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtains appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from SOI/SSI.</li> <li>b. Enters a radio net.</li> <li>c. Authenticates when challenged by NCS.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Radio operator recognizes frequency interference.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognizes jamming/interference.</li> <li>b. Determines if interference is internal or external.</li> <li>c. Determines if interference is intentional or unintentional.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Radio operator initiates prescribed ECCM.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continues to operate.</li> <li>b. Increases transmit power.</li> <li>c. Tunes receiver for max signal.</li> <li>d. Relocates antenna.</li> <li>e. Requests change of frequency.</li> <li>f. Reports suspected jamming to immediate supervisor.</li> <li>g. Submits MIJI feeder report.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use COMSEC equipment (secure) if available (TSEC/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57).</li> <li>b. Load appropriate key variables using KYK 13, or KOI 15.</li> <li>c. Use only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by SOI/SSI.</li> <li>d. Encrypt and decrypt grid coordinates using the SOI/SSI (not necessary in secure voice operation).</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
e. Keep the length and number of transmissions to a minimum (not more than 20 seconds per transmission). f. Use the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations. g. Use correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observe periods of radio listening silence. i. Adhere to net discipline.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>References</b>	<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
STP 11-31C13-SM-TG	113-573-4003	ENCODE AND DECODE MESSAGES USING KTC 600(*) TACTICAL OPERATIONS CODE
	113-573-4006	USE THE KTC 1400(*) NUMERAL CIPHER/AUTHENTICATION SYSTEM

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

## CHAPTER 6

### External Evaluation

**6-1. Introduction.** An external evaluation is conducted to evaluate the platoon's ability to perform its mission. This chapter is a guide for preparing an external evaluation. Using units may modify the evaluation based on METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. The platoon will be evaluated using the standards of selected T&EOs contained in Chapter 5 of this MTP. The evaluation will evaluate the platoon and each squad of the platoon. The evaluation should employ the use of a realistic opposing force and the use of the MILES. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander should be able to identify the strengths and weaknesses of the platoon. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocation.

**6-2. Preparing the Evaluation.** The commander must standardize the evaluation procedures to accurately measure the platoon's capabilities.

**a. Preparing the Evaluation Instrument.** The sample evaluation scenario outlined in Figure 6-1 contains the mission as well as the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Because it is not possible or desirable to evaluate every task, selective tailoring is required. The following procedures should be considered when developing the evaluation:

- (1) Identify the mission to be evaluated for each echelon or element, using paragraph 1-4 of this MTP. Record the selected missions on the Unit Proficiency Worksheet (Figure 6-2).
- (2) List each mission on a separate Task Summary Sheet (Figure 6-3).
- (3) Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the Task Summary Sheet (Figure 6-3). Only the evaluators recording the results of the evaluations will use these forms.
- (4) Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order that they will logically occur in a detailed scenario. Divide the scenario into parts that can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct in-progress AARs.

**b. Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources.** Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requested. (See Figure 6-4 for estimated support requirements for one platoon.)

**c. Selecting and Preparing the Field Evaluation Site.** Required size of terrain, type of terrain, OPFOR requirements, and administrative requirements are the basis for site selection. The OPFOR is positioned according to threat doctrine. The site must provide space for the administrative area required to support the evaluation.

**d. Planning Indirect Fire Simulation.** Because it greatly influences the outcome of battles, reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.

- (1) The fire marker control system outlined in TC 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. Due to the amount of required resources, this method may be difficult to support.

SAMPLE EVALUATION SCENARIO			
EVENT	ACTION	DURATION	TIME FRAME
1	Administrative preparation	8 hours	Before start
2	Issue platoon march order	1 hour	Day 1 1900
3	Conduct vehicle tactical road march (day and/or night)	1 hour	2000
4	Occupy Assembly Area (night)	1 hour	2100
PART 1			
5	Receive warning order	1 hour	2200
6	Conduct MP Support to Rear Operations	6 hours	2300
7	Conduct Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance	3 hours	Day 2 0800
8	Conduct Area and Zone Reconnaissance	3 hours	0500
9	Conduct Sustaining Operations	1 hour	0900
PART 2			
10	Conduct MP Operations in an NBC Environment	5 hours	1400
11	Conduct Sustaining Operations	1 hour	1500
PART 3			
12	Conduct Route Regulation and Enforcement and Route Signing	1 hour	1600
13	Conduct Dislocated Civilian and Straggler Control Operations	3 hours	1900
14	Perform Area Security Operations	8 hours	0300
15	Conduct Sustaining Operations	1 hour	0400
PART 4			
16	Conduct Movement to Contact	2 hours	Day 3 2400
17	Conduct a Hasty Attack	1 hour	0200
18	Conduct Collecting Point and Holding Area Operations	1 hour	0300
19	Conduct Sustaining Operations	1 hour	0400
20	Move to AAR Site and Conduct AAR	3 hours	0700
TOTAL TIME		52 hours	

Figure 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario







ESTIMATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS	
Ammunition and Pyrotechnics	Quantity
5.56-mm blank, M16	240 rounds per weapon
5.56-mm blank, M249	400 rounds per weapon
5.56-mm blank, M-4	240 rounds per weapon
Smoke grenades	2 per person
Hand grenades, inert	2 per person
Simulator, artillery	8 per platoon
Simulator, booby trap	6 per platoon
CS grenades	6 per platoon
Simulator projectile, ground burst	3 per exercise
Signal, illumination, white parachute	1 per exercise
NBC Equipment	Quantity
M9 chemical detection paper	1 each
Chemlight	1 box
XM22 chemical alarm	1 per squad
AN/VDR-2 radiac set	1 per squad
Other Equipment	Quantity
Blank adapter	1 set per weapon
BA 200, 6-volt batteries	12
BA 3090, 9-volt batteries	140
MILES	1 set per soldier/OPFOR
Controller gun	1 per evaluator
Small-arms alignment fixture	1 per platoon
Electronic system test set	1 per platoon

**Figure 6-4. Estimated Support Requirements for One Platoon.**

(2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to react to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters, which will simulate the tactical FDC. The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the OCs who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the OC may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. The FM 25 series provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Figure 6-5 provides the burst radius and sheaf size of various indirect fire weapons. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

BURSTING RADIUS AND SHEAF SIZES OF INDIRECT FIRE WEAPONS		
WEAPON	BURST RADIUS	SHEAF SIZE
81-mm mortar	25 m	100 x 50 m
107-mm mortar	50 m	200 x 150 m
105-mm howitzer	30 m	200 x 150 m
155-mm howitzer	50 m	300 x 200 m

**Figure 6-5. Bursting Radius.**

### **6-3. Selecting the Observer Controllers.**

a. The OCs must know the unit's missions, organization, equipment, and employment. The senior OC should be at least equal in rank to the unit commander and have successfully performed in that specific or similar command position.

b. The following are desired minimum rank and experience requirements for the OCs:

(1) The platoon OC will be an officer (CPT or LT) with platoon leader experience.

(2) The squad OCs will consist of three NCOs who have squad leader experience.

(3) The recorder will be an officer or NCO at the evaluation control headquarters who receives "kill" information or results and time data from the OCs.

**6-4. Training the Observer Controllers.** The OCs standardize administration of the evaluation by understanding the following three functional areas:

**a. Evaluation Design.** Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. The OCs must thoroughly understand the evaluation and correctly implement it.

**b. MILES.** Each OC, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES system being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functional before each part of the scenario.

**c. Evaluation Control System.** This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

(1) Rules of engagement.

(2) OC duties and responsibilities.

(3) Communication systems.

(4) Evaluation data collection plan.

**6-5. Recording External Evaluation Information.**

a. The evaluating HQ develops the data recording instruments for the OCs. The Unit Data Sheet, Figure 6-6, presents demographic information that may reflect on a unit's performance. The Environmental Data Sheet, Figure 6-7, documents weather information in order to compare missions conducted under differing environmental conditions. The Personnel and Equipment Loss Report, Figure 6-8, documents information that may affect the unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR.

b. The senior OC has overall responsibility for preparation of the external evaluation. This evaluation is based on senior OC's findings and input from the subordinate OCs. Subordinate OCs use the task evaluation criteria (T&EOs from Chapter 5 and Task Summary Sheets) to determine overall proficiency in their particular areas. The senior OC compiles the external evaluation results as prescribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the platoon OC may be addressed in the senior OC comments portion of the Unit Proficiency Worksheet.

**6-6. Selecting and Training the OPFOR.** The selection and training of OPFOR are crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influences the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. Each platoon should face an opponent who realistically resembles the threat in strength, weapons, and skill.

**a. Selection.** Any group of qualified skill level 1 or 2 soldiers can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small, cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.

**b. Training.** The OPFOR must understand the following six major areas:

- (1) Installation and operation of the MILES devices.
- (2) Rules of engagement.
- (3) Threat small unit tactics.
- (4) Training scenarios.
- (5) OPFOR weapons and equipment, if available.
- (6) Safety.

**c. OPFOR Strength.**

(1) Offense. Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three to one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR is stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional platoon will overcome them. They must also be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the platoon's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the platoon a realistic challenge, but one that they can defeat when proper tactics are employed.

(2) Defense. The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three-to-one ratio of superiority, because anything less will not have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct successful attack. They must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all platoons will quickly defend. Once the OPFOR establishes their plan, they must use the same plan for all other like units for that event in order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.

UNIT DATA SHEET			
1. UNIT DESIGNATION:			
2. UNIT LEADERS: (Circle most correct answer).			
<b>POSITION</b>	<b>RANK</b>		<b>TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)</b>
PLT LDR	1LT 2LT E7		1-3 3-6 6-12 12-18 19 or more
PLT SGT	E7 E6		1-3 3-6 6-12 12-18 19 or more
1st SQD LDR	E6 E5 E4		1-3 3-6 6-12 12-18 19 or more
2d SQD LDR	E6 E5 E4		1-3 3-6 6-12 12-18 19 or more
3d SQD LDR	E6 E5 E4		1-3 3-6 6-12 12-18 19 or more
FO E5 E4 E3	1-3 3-6 6-12 12-18 19 or more		
3. UNIT STRENGTH (Excluding leaders): _____			
4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGE (Major items): _____			
5. COMMENTS: _____			

**Figure 6-6. Unit Data Sheet.**

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET
<p>MODULE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:</p> <p>DATE/TIME MODULE STARTED:</p> <p>DATE/TIME MODULE ENDED:</p> <p>1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)</p> <p>Clear Partly Cloudy Cloudy Hazy Raining Snowing Fog</p> <p>Other (Describe):</p> <p>Temperature:</p> <p>2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)</p> <p>Dry Wet Ice Snow Other (Describe):</p> <p>3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">A. Day Night</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">B. Moon Phase: None 1/4 1/2 3/4 Full</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">C. Average range visibility due to light:</p> <p>4. TERRAIN: (Circle appropriate description)</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">A. Flat Rolling Mountainous Jungle Desert Urban Arctic</p> <p>Other (Describe):</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">B. Top soil composition:</p> <p>Sandy Rocky Clay Other (Describe):</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">C. Average range of visibility due to terrain:</p> <p>5. REMARKS:</p>

**Figure 6-7. Environmental Data Sheet.**

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
Mission Title or Task Number	Date and Time Enemy Contact	Friendly KIA/WIA	Enemy KIA/WIA	Friendly Vehicles Destroyed	Enemy Vehicles Destroyed
COMMENTS:					

**Figure 6-8. Personnel and Equipment Loss Report.**

**6-7. Conducting the Evaluation.** The evaluation is divided into three distinct areas. Each requires different degrees of preparation and coordination:

**a. Preevaluation.**

(1) The senior OC and all other OCs must reconnoiter the evaluation area. They must know the location of the unit's boundaries, disposition of the OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the field evaluation site's area of operations.

(2) The unit must prepare an OPORD and FRAGO to be used to control the exercise. These can be prepared by using the skeleton orders contained in the STXs found in Chapter 4.

(3) Platoon preparatory activities include installing and troubleshooting MILES equipment, loading combat vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistical and administrative actions.

(4) The OPFOR is placed in position and briefed while the platoon is conducting its preparatory activities.

(5) In this evaluation scenario, the platoon is issued an order to move to an assembly area. When the assembly area has been occupied, the OPORD is issued. Once the platoon leader has issued the platoon and squad orders, the OCs should make a last functional check of the MILES equipment.

**b. Evaluation.**

(1) The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways: First, it uses measures established in both the movement order and in paragraphs 3 and 5 of the OPORD or the FRAGO. Second, the team controls the evaluation through the company team commander (simulated by the senior OC for this evaluation) on the company team net. The team does not control in the traditional sense, instead it accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior OC has direct verbal contact with the platoon leader. All other OCs do not speak to, aid, advise, point out positions, or in any way influence the platoon's performance, except for a possible or actual safety issue or emergency. OCs are neutral throughout the evaluation.

(2) Once the senior OC has issued the OPORD and movement order, the platoon leader executes the events and actions prescribed in the first part of the evaluation scenario within the estimated time. From this point on, all successive parts begin with a FRAGO.

(3) The senior OC terminates a part when the platoon has completed all the events and actions in a particular area or has suffered so many casualties or so much damage that the part cannot be completed. The OC must record the reasons for the termination in the margin of the Task Summary Sheet and report the action to the evaluation control headquarters. In the sample evaluation scenario, the completion of each event or action is indicated by "conduct sustaining operations." During this period, the senior OC will direct the platoon to remain in position while "replacements" (personnel and equipment designated as killed or destroyed) are sent forward to reconstitute the unit. At this time, OCs must perform the following actions:

(a) Inspect all MILES equipment, record "kill" codes, and reset equipment. Replace any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment.



(b) Promptly resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. Report this information to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Debrief the platoon and squads to resolve questions. The senior OC then directs the platoon to continue its mission after it receives a company team FRAGO or OPORD for the next part.

(4) All OCs should follow the following guidelines:

(a) Report major "kills" (vehicles, groups).

(b) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct fire effectiveness. Both significant firings and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Enforce rules of engagement.

(d) Observe critical tactical events of time. The OCs must spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome.

(e) Record travel routes and unit locations.

(f) Inform OPFOR controller of the unit's locations, direction, and intent. This is necessary to enable OPFOR actions to be controlled in accordance with the desired sequence of events.

(g) Enforce safety.

(h) Terminate the mission.

**c. Postevaluation.** After the evaluation is terminated, the platoon moves to an assembly area and performs the following actions:

(1) The platoon OC debriefs subordinate OCs and compiles all data (evaluator packets) for the evaluation.

(2) The platoon OC completes the Task Summary Sheets.

(3) The platoon OC turns in all completed OC packets (with the OCs' scoring system) to control headquarters for recording and analysis.

(4) The senior OC conducts an AAR of the platoon's performance.

(5) Each squad OC should conduct an AAR of the squad's performance.

## **6-8. Conducting the After-Action-Review.**

**a. General.** At the completion of each evaluation part, the AAR leader provides feedback to the platoon and squads in order to increase and reinforce learning.

**b. Feedback.** Because all members of the unit participate in an AAR, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer "data base" for key points. The AAR leader will draw information from each member. This information becomes an important part of the discussion and is the basis for discussing alternative courses of action.

**c. Preparing the AAR.** AAR preparation involves five steps:

(1) Review training orders and objectives. Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The OCs should be familiar with the objectives and FRAGOs so that they can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate elements that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

(2) Observe the exercise. This is an active process. The emphasis is on noting those actions that make the difference between unit success and failure. The OC does not need to remain close to the unit leader because more can be seen from high ground near the lead element's location or along the unit's route when moving. Because unit orders identify important activities and checkpoints, the OC must be present when the command issues the orders. The OC should take a position where anticipated critical events can be observed. Examples of critical events include the following:

- (a) Loss of major weapons system or item of equipment.
- (b) Major breach of security.
- (c) Major command and control failures.
- (d) Acquisition of important intelligence.
- (e) Successful deceptive maneuver.
- (f) Occupation or control of major terrain features.
- (g) Neutralization or destruction of major OPFOR capabilities, elements, or weapons.

(3) Select the site and assemble the participants. After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where most of the critical events took place (normally where the OPFOR was positioned), or where the terrain can be observed. Usually the OPFOR or unit objectives are suitable for assembling the players and conducting AARs.

(4) Debrief the OCs. While the units are moving to the selected site, the OCs should be debriefed. The senior OC must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. The fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise's events in the order in which they occurred.

(5) Review the Events. After the senior OC has a sound understanding of what happened during the exercise, he or she reviews the events and ranks them in terms of their relevance to exercise training objectives and their contribution to the exercise outcome. The senior OC selects as many events as can be covered in the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

**d. Conducting the AAR.** Conducting the AAR requires five steps:

(1) Organize the participants. When the senior OC and AAR leader assemble the participants, they group them according to their organization in the exercise. Subordinate OCs stay with the units for which they are responsible.

(2) State the training objectives. The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These are described as specifically as possible. The AAR leader states any

additional teaching points that will be covered during the AAR. These should be limited to three or four key points to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(3) Lead the discussion. The AAR leader guides the discussion of the events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features, and as the AAR proceeds, has the participants draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. In an effective AAR, the AAR leader should--

- (a) Avoid giving a critique or lecture.
- (b) Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.
- (c) Suggest the players describe what occurred in their own terms.
- (d) Suggest the players discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened, and how it could have been done better.
- (e) Focus the discussion to ensure that important tactical lessons are made explicit.
- (f) Relate tactical events to subsequent results.
- (g) Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.
- (h) Encourage the participants to draw diagrams to illustrate teaching points and to show routes, phase lines, and objectives.
- (i) Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical action.

(4) Review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise.

- (a) Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents?
- (b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?
- (c) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?
- (d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified, and what was done to overcome it?
- (e) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.

(5) Summarize key points. The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, the AAR leader may have a private conversation with the platoon leader regarding strengths and weaknesses and what can be done to further improve personal and unit performance. A good AAR leader--

- (a) Maintains order and discipline.
- (b) Reviews training objectives.
- (c) Addresses important events as they occurred and how the platoon could have done

them better. During the discussion, the AAR leader avoids a detailed examination of events not directly related to the training objective.

(d) Traces the chain of events so all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.

(e) Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.

(f) Involves participants in the discussion.

(g) Clearly and concisely gives the summary and new training objectives.

(h) Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models in the AAR.

e. Reference materials for conducting an AAR are TC 25-6, TC 25-20, and FM 25-101.

## APPENDIX A

### Combined Arms Training Strategy

#### **A-1. Introduction.**

a. The CATS was developed to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and to identify the resources required to support that training. Upon implementation, CATS will support training integration of heavy, light, and special operations forces of both Active Component and Reserve Component soldiers. It will enable the Army to more effectively identify, manage, and program the acquisition of training resources vital to achieving and sustaining the combat readiness of the total Army.

b. The CATS concept envisions an overarching strategy that will enable the Army to focus and manage all unit and soldier training in an integrated manner. At the heart of CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit training strategies that describe the events, frequencies, and resources required to train soldiers and units to standards. These strategies will provide field commanders with a descriptive menu for training. We recognize that while there may be a "best" way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units will have the exact mix of resources required to execute the strategy precisely as written.

#### **A-2. Elements of the Unit Strategies.**

a. **Maneuver Strategy.** The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and to depict those resources required to support these events. Each column contains the number of iterations of each event recommended for annual execution by a specific echelon or level. This number reflects how many times a unit will train at that particular level. The numbers at each echelon/level stand alone. Therefore, it is not necessary to add the frequencies in the event column to determine the number of times a unit participates in a training event annually. For example, 12 STXs at the AC platoon level mean that the platoon participates in 12 STXs regardless of the frequencies at other levels. The 12 STXs can be trained as a platoon, with the company, with the battalion, or with any combination of these units.

b. **Gunnery Strategy.** The gunnery strategy is built around weapon systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapon training. Schools identified in DA Pamphlet 350-38 as proponents for weapons or weapon systems have developed gunnery strategies. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from DA Pam 350-38 and appropriate FMs and TMs. DA Pamphlet 350-38 provides sustainment and qualification standards requirements for all weapons systems.

c. **Soldier Strategy.** The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

**A-3. Guide to the Maneuver Strategy.** The following paragraphs provide a guide to reading and using the strategy. We will use the Military Police company maneuver training strategy as our maneuver example. (See Figure A-1.)

MILITARY POLICE COMPANY MANEUVER TRAINING STRATEGY																
EVENTS LEVELS	DRILL	MAPEX	TEWT	CELL/STAFF SEC TNG	TOCEX	STAFFEX	CPX	FCX	STX	LCX	CFX	DEPEX	FTX	EXEVAL CTC	JTX CTX	CSS CUS SPT OPNS
TEAM AC																
TEAM RC																
SQUAD AC																
SQUAD RC																
PLT AC		3	1				3		4	4		4	3	1	1	
PLT RC		1					1		2	1		1	1	1	.25	
CO AC		3	1				3		4	4		4	3	1	1	
CO RC		1					1		2	1		1	1	1	.25	
BN AC																
BN RC		1		4		2	1		2	1		1	1	1	.25	
CRITICAL GATES													STX	FTX		
RESOURCES																
OPTEMPO									120			20	480	480	40	
AMMO																
TADSS																
TNG LAND																
TNG RG																
1. TADSS #1 MILES II 2. THE TRAINING AREA MUST BE LARGE ENOUGH TO SUPPORT THE MANEUVER UNIT IAW TC 25-1.																

Figure A-1. Military Police Guard Company Maneuver Training Strategy.

a. Across the top of the maneuver strategy are major training events. The order in which the events appear, from left to right, is not designed to be prescriptive. However, the events do follow a logical progression of how a unit might proceed through an annual training cycle. Explanations of these events are found in FM 25-100 and FM 25-101.

b. On the left side of the maneuver strategy is the column titled "Levels." This column lists the echelons that train on the events. For each echelon there is an AC and an RC line for the listing of the appropriate training frequencies.

c. Each column lists the number of iterations each event is recommended for execution annually by a specific echelon or level. The number of iterations reflects how many times a unit will train at that particular level. To determine how many times a unit participates in a training event annually, add the frequencies in the event column. For example, look at the training event, MAPEX. Recommended here is that an AC platoon conduct MAPEX training three times a year. For another example, look at the training event, FTX. It recommends that AC platoons conduct platoon FTXs three times a year. As you can see, this platoon would participate in a total of six FTXs during the year: three at platoon level and three at company level.

d. Found under "levels" is a training category called "Critical Gates." Critical gates are training events that must be conducted to standard before moving onto a more difficult or resource intensive event or task. The Military Police School has determined that STXs are critical gates for an FTX and has placed the STX on the critical gates line beneath the FTX. It is intended that the unit commander ensure the STX is conducted to standard before proceeding to the FTX.

e. At the bottom part of the maneuver strategy is a section for identifying the resources that will be used to support each training event. This form shows five categories of resources: OPTEMPO, ammunition, TADSS, training land, and training ranges.

f. The OPTEMPO is the amount and type of petroleum products (fuel, oil, lubricants) and repair parts used in a training event. Quantities listed for training events are based on a C-1 (highest) level of readiness from the unit status report.

(1) The figures reflect total mileage or hours per event for the base vehicle or equipment listed in the BLTM. The base vehicle for the MP Corps is the HMMWV. For example, the BLTM allocated a total of 20 miles for the HMMWV to conduct a DEPEX. Since four exercises are recommended, each exercise should be resourced accordingly.

(2) The proponent school has the flexibility to adjust OPTEMPO figures for training events, provided they do not exceed the authorized total listed in the BLTM. Where there is no BLTM, proponents will list the current consumption rate for the base vehicle or equipment.

g. Ammunition figures are listed by event and come from DA Pam 350-38. Maneuver training strategies will reflect only blank ammunition requirements while live ammunition requirements are depicted on the gunnery strategies.

h. The TADSS support specific training events. Listed are those system and nonsystem TADSS that have been fielded. The local TSC can provide information on the TADSS available locally, and DA Pam 350-9 provides an index and description of all available TADSS.

i. Training land is a resource category that will list land requirements by event for an echelon to conduct maneuver training. Training requirements are addressed in TC 25-1.

j. The training range section identifies types of ranges required for a training event.

**A-4. Guide to the Gunnery Strategy.** The following paragraphs provide a guide to reading and using the strategy. We will use the attached weapon strategies as gunnery examples. (See Figures A-2 through A-6.)

a. Gunnery strategies have been developed by schools identified in the DA Pamphlet 350-38 as proponents for weapons or weapon systems. This relieves non-proponent schools of the responsibility for constructing gunnery strategies. As the Infantry is the proponent for the M16, it developed this strategy which is applicable to all branches.

b. Training events are shown in the top position of the gunnery strategy. The levels or echelons that will train on these tasks are shown on the left. As shown, qualification for the M16 is conducted at the individual level. The critical gate tasks for qualification are listed in FM 23-9. The unit commander will ensure the soldier meets all these requirements before moving onto qualification.

c. Frequency depicts how often the tasks listed in the upper part of the strategy should be conducted annually. Per guidance provided in DA Pamphlet 350-38, the frequency block for the M16 has been divided into two categories. Category I applies to soldiers with either an 11B or 11M MOS assigned to an infantry rifle squad or a 19D or 11B assigned to a scout squad or long-range surveillance detachment. Category II applies to all combat arms, combat support, and combat service support soldiers not assigned to rifle or infantry squads.

d. These two categories are further subdivided by training readiness condition in accordance with DA Pamphlet 350-38. They are TRC A = AC units, TRC L = light infantry, air assault and airborne units; TRC S = special reaction teams (AC, military police teams), TRC C = RC units, TRC D = USAR training division, reception stations and separate training brigades, and NGB training cadre.

e. Training categories and training readiness conditions provide an all-encompassing set of training frequencies. Here a light infantry squad is required to conduct three live fire exercises per year while RC squads have no requirement.

f. M16 training does not require OPTEMPO.



M16A1/A2 TRAINING STRATEGY							
	PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION	ZERO	QUAL				
INDIVIDUAL							
TEAM				F/MLFX			
SQUAD						LFX	
PLATOON						LFX	
COMPANY							CALFEX
BATTALION							
CRITICAL GATES		IAW FM 23-9	IAW FM 23-9				
REQUIREMENT							
INF/SEC	A	2	2	2	2	3	1
SQDS	L	2	2	2	2	8	1
	S						
	C	1	1	2	1		
	D						
CA/CS/	A	4	1	1			
CSS	L	2	2	2			
ARMS	S	4	4	4			
	C	1	1	1			
	D	1	1	1			
RESOURCES							
OPTEMPO							
AMMO		NONE	18 BALL	80 BALL 10 TRAC			
TADSS		EST/WPNR/MACS SDSSTD	WPNR/MACS LOMAH SDSSTD	WPNR/MACS LOMAH SDSSTD			
TNG LAND							
TNG RANGE			25M ZERO - RG	AUTO FIRE - RG			
QUAL INCLUDES DAYLIGHT, NBC AND NIGHT PRACTICE, AND RECORD FIRE.							

Figure A-2. M16A1/A2 Training Strategy.

PISTOL TRAINING STRATEGY				
	PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION	INSTRUCTIONAL FIRE	QUAL	MP QUAL
INDIVIDUAL				
TEAM				
SQUAD				
PLATOON				
COMPANY				
BATTALION				
CRITICAL GATES				
REQUIREMENT				
CA/CS/	A	2	0	1
CS	L	1	1	1
ARMS	S	12	8	
	C	1	1	1
	D	1	1	1
RESOURCES				
OPTEMPO				
AMMO		10 BALL	50 BALL	60 BALL
TADSS		SDSSTD	SDSSTD	SDSSTD
TNG LAND				MPFQC
TNG RANGE		CPQC	CPQC	
NOTES: 1. MP will qualify at least once annually on the MP Firearms Qualification Course. The commander will determine if the second qualification will be on the MPFQC or the CPQC based on unit mission. 2. Unit firing the MPFQC will conduct NBC Record Fire IAW CPQC.				

Figure A-3. Pistol Training Strategy.

MK19 TRAINING STRATEGY						
	PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION	GNR TEST	ZERO PRACTICE	RECORD	NIGHT RECORD	QUAL
INDIVIDUAL						
TEAM						
SQUAD						
PLATOON						
COMPANY						
BATTALION						
CRITICAL GATES		FM 23-27 W/C1	FM 23-27 W/C1	FM 23-27 W/C1		FM 23-27 W/C1
REQUIREMENT						
CA/CS/	A	12	4	2	2	2
CSS	L	12	4	1	1	1
ARMS	S					
	C	2	4	1	1	.5
	D	2	4	1	1	.5(MOD)
RESOURCES						
OPTEMPO						
AMMO		10 DUMMY	30 TP	42 TP	22 TP	94 TP
TADSS			SDSSTD	SDSSTD	SDSSTD	SDSSTD
TNG LAND						
TNG RANGE			MPRC	MPRC	MPRC	MPRC
A/GNRs FIRE TABLES C-1, 2, 5, 6, 7 USING 68 TP ANNUALLY FOR ALL TRCs EXCEPT BIENNIALY FOR TRC C & D. QUAL INCLUDES TABLES C-5, 6, 7, W/ 6 ALSO FIRED IN MOPP4.						

Figure A-4. MK19 Training Strategy.

MACHINE GUN TRAINING STRATEGY					
	PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION	GNR EXAM	10M PRACTICE	QUAL	AGNR FIRE
INDIVIDUAL					
TEAM					
SQUAD					
PLATOON					
COMPANY					
BATTALION					
CRITICAL GATES		IAW APP FM	IAW APP FM	IAW APP FM	
REQUIREMENT					
CA/CS/	A 1 (2-M2)	2	1 (2-M2)	1	1
CSS	L 2	2	2 (1-M2)	2 (1-M2)	
ARMS	S				
	C 1	1	1	.5	
	D 1	1	1 (0-M2)	1 (MOD.)	
RESOURCES					
OPTEMPO					
AMMO 5.56/7.62 CAL .50			117 BALL 86 BALL	119 MIX 333 MIX	532 MIX 419 MIX
TADSS			LOMAH SDSSTD	LOMAH SDSSTD	
TNG LAND					
TNG RANGE			10M RG	MPMG RG	MPMG RG
QUAL INCLUDES DAYLIGHT, NBC AND NIGHT PRACTICE, AND RECORD FIRE.					

Figure A-5. Machine Gun Training Strategy.

<b>M203 GRENADE LAUNCHER TRAINING STRATEGY</b>					
		PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION	ZERO	QUAL	NIGHT RECORD TAB 8-3
INDIVIDUAL					
TEAM					
SQUAD					
PLATOON					
COMPANY					
BATTALION					
CRITICAL GATES			IAW FM 23-31	IAW FM 23-31	
REQUIREMENT					
CA/CS/	A	1	1	1	1
CSS	L	2	2	2	1
ARMS	S	2	2	2	1
	C	1	1	1	1
	D	1	1	1	1
RESOURCES					
OPTEMPO					
AMMO			6 TP	12 TP	3 HE
TADSS					
TNG LAND					
TNG RANGE					MPMG RG
QUAL INCLUDES TABLE 8-2 RECORD FIRE AND TABLE 8-3 NBC FIRE.					

**Figure A-6. M203 Grenade Launcher Training Strategy.**

g. Figures for ammunition are IAW DA Pamphlet 350-38. Qualification with the M16 requires 160 rounds of ball and 20 rounds of tracer ammunition per weapon.

h. The TADSS line shows the following simulators are recommended to support M16 qualification: the multipurpose arcade combat simulator, the shoot/don't shoot stress training device, the weaponeer, and the location of miss and hit.

**A-5. Guide to the Soldier Strategy.** The following paragraphs provide a guide to reading and using the sample soldier training strategy. (See Figure A-7.)

a. While the gunnery and maneuver strategies focus more at the collective level, the soldier strategy focuses on individual skills and soldier tasks. This strategy may be applied collectively to a career management field or singularly to a military occupational specialty.

b. Training events selected for the 95B MOS are listed across the top of the strategy. In the left column are frequencies depicting how often an event should be executed on an annual basis. The letters "AC" represent Active Component soldiers and the letters "RC" represent Reserve Component soldiers. The letter "X" is placed in the event column on the line corresponding with AC or RC. The letter "T" will be placed in the event column for testing requirements on the AC or RC line.

c. For the 95B MOS, the Military Police School has listed no resources to support training.

SOLDIER TRAINING STRATEGY											
EVENT FREQUENCY (1)	PHYS TNG	APFT	SGTs TIME(2)	MOS TNG	CTT	CTT TEST	COMMON MIL TNG (CMT)(3)	NBC TNG	MAINT TNG	LDR DEV TNG	WPNS QUAL
DAILY	AC X RC			X							
WEEKLY	AC RC			X					X	X	
MONTHLY	AC RC X		X	X		X		X	X	X	
QUARTERLY	AC RC							X			
SEMI-ANNUAL	AC RC		T								X
ANNUAL	AC RC		T			X					X
BIENNIAL	AC RC										
AS REQUIRED							X				
RESOURCES											
OPTEMPO											
AMMO											
TADSS											
TNG LAND											
TNG RG											
NOTES: 1. Frequencies are based on average soldier requirements; areas may be trained more often based on NCO feedback and commander's assessment to support METL proficiency. 2. SGT'S time is time on the unit TNG SCHD for SGTs to conduct individual training to support METL. 3. CMT is mandatory training IAW AR 350-1. 4. Leadership development includes OPD, NCOPD, career counseling, education skills, etc. 5. PT is only required to be conducted 3 times per week. 6. A = ACTIVE COMPONENT, R = RESERVE COMPONENT, T = TESTING REQUIREMENT.											

Figure A-7. Soldier Training Strategy.

## APPENDIX B

### Verb List

**B-1. Introduction.** Words have different meanings to different people. Even dictionaries do not always agree on exact meanings of words and the connotation of a word may depend on the person, the circumstances, and the context in which it is used.

**B-2. Definitions.** Trainers, performers, and evaluators must apply a consistent meaning to verbs because the verb describes the action that must be taken to perform a task. The following definitions are from TRADOC Regulation 350-70. These are the intended meanings whenever the verbs are used in a collective task, STX, or FTX in this publication.

- Conduct: To direct or control, lead or guide.
- Coordinate: To bring into common action, movement, or condition.
- Determine: To settle or decide by choice of alternatives or possibilities.
- Develop: To set forth or make clear by degrees or in detail.
- Direct: To regulate the activities or course by acting through subordinate leaders; to control through suggestions and guidelines.
- Employ: To make use of.
- Enforce: To see that the provisions (of an order or regulation) are carried out effectively.
- Ensure: To make certain; to guarantee.
- Establish: To bring into existence; to introduce as a permanent entity or procedure.
- Identify: To determine critical or necessary conditions or other factors.
- Maintain: To preserve, fix, or keep in good repair.
- Monitor: To watch, observe, or check, especially for a special purpose.
- Perform: To carry out an action or pattern of behavior.
- Plan: To devise or project; to formulate a systematic scheme or program of action.
- Prepare: To put together; to combine elements and produce a product; to make ready.
- Process: To initiate a series of actions or operations leading to a particular end.
- Provide: To supply or make available.
- Report: To present an account officially; to formally or regularly carry back and repeat to another; to provide information on ongoing activities.



ARTEP 19-313-10-MTP

- Supervise: To oversee; to critically watch, motivate, and direct the activities of subordinates.
- Support: To aid or help.
- Update: To bring up to date or to make current.

## GLOSSARY

### ACRONYMS, ABBREVIATIONS, AND DEFINITIONS

aa	antiaircraft
AAR	after-action review: A method of providing feedback to units by involving the participants in the training diagnosis process in order to increase and reinforce learning. The AAR is structured around sequential exercise events and the AAR leader guides the participants to identify errors and to seek solutions themselves.
AC	Active Component
agnr	assistant gunner
AL	Alabama
ammo	ammunition
AO	area of operations
AOR	area of responsibility
APFT	Army Physical Fitness Test
app	appropriate
AR	Army regulation
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program: This is the US Army training and evaluation program that prescribes the missions and collective tasks that a unit must perform to accomplish its mission and survive on the battlefield. For the trainer, ARTEP provides the tasks, conditions, minimum standards, and training support requirements that assist in the conduct of performance-oriented training. For the training manager, ARTEP is a tool that will aid in assessing training proficiency, establishing training objectives, and programming resources. The ARTEP consists of the MTP, drills, soldier's manuals, and other training products required to train a unit to proficiency.
ASP	ammunition supply point
ATTN	attention
auto	automatic
battle drill	A collective action executed by a platoon or smaller element without application of a deliberate decision making process. The action is vital to success in combat or critical to preserving life. The drill is initiated on a cue, such as an enemy action or simple leader's order, and is a trained response to a given stimulus. It requires minimal leader orders to accomplish and is standard throughout the Army.
BF	battle fatigue
BLTM	battalion level training model
BOS	battlefield operating system
	training management responsibilities for the use of commanders and their subordinates in planning and conducting training.
C	centigrade
CA	Civil Affairs

cal	caliber
CALFEX	combined arms live fire exercise
CANA	convulsant antidote for nerve agent (diazepam)
CATS	combined arms training strategy
CCIR	commander's critical information requirements
cdr	commander
centralized training	Training that releases the authority and responsibility for the detailed planning, conduct, and internal evaluation of training to the battalion or separate company level. Brigade headquarters and above retain the responsibility for providing mission-type guidance to their subordinate units, allocating training resources, and providing coordination, while the broad supervision and evaluation of training may be conducted at company level.
CFX	command field exercise
CI	civilian internee
CMT	common military training
collective task	A unit of work that requires the efforts of more than one person for its completion or that must be accomplished by a whole echelon such as a platoon, a company, or a battalion. Collective tasks have identifiable start and end points and result in a measurable accomplishment or product. Subtasks or elements of a collective task may be individual tasks in their own right. A collective task may be as simple as the replacement of an equipment part that is too heavy or cumbersome for one person to replace or the use of a weapon system too complex for one person to operate or manipulate, or it may be as complex as actions required of an overall mission that are then further refined into subtasks and individual tasks.
collective training proficiency: collective training	The ability of a unit to successfully Training in units to prepare cohesive teams and units to accomplish their combined arms and services missions on the integrated battlefield.
combat operations	For military police, those actions taken to seek out, close with, and when they can, destroy enemy forces in the rear area. This is to prevent the enemy from delaying the commander's reinforcing units, disrupting his command and control, and destroying his nuclear weapons capability. This also allows the commander to keep his major tactical units fighting the main battle.
combat readiness	The ability of a unit to perform in combat. Combat readiness considers the status of personnel, equipment, and training. Collective training proficiency, based on the ARTEP, is only <u>one</u> consideration in determining combat readiness.
combined arms	The combination of combat, combat support, and combat service support components of the force structure to accomplish a tactical or strategic mission.
COMEX	communications exercise
command post exercise	An exercise designed to train leaders and staff officers to plan and execute tactical operations without requiring the presence and participation of the soldiers in the unit.
common collective tasks	Those collective tasks that apply to units in general or to many units that have different service school proponents. "Set up personnel decontamination station" is an example of a common collective task.

COMSEC	communications security
conditions	The situation/environment in which the unit will be expected to accomplish a task.
CP	command post
CPQC	Combat Pistol Qualification Course
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CPX	command post exercise
CR	dibenzoxazepine
crew drill	A collective action that a crew of a weapon or piece of equipment must perform to use the weapon or equipment successfully in combat or to preserve life. This action is a trained response to stimulus such as a simple leader order or the status of the weapons or equipment. It requires minimal leader order to accomplish and is standard throughout the Army.
critical collective task	A collective task identified by front-end analysis that provides an immediate, direct, or significant impact on the ability of a unit to accomplish a specific wartime mission or to survive on the battlefield.
critical wartime missions	Those missions, assigned or implied, that a unit must accomplish in wartime. Critical wartime missions are identified during the conduct of front-end analysis as missions that are vital to the unit's success or survival on the battlefield.
CS	chemical stimulant (ortho-chlorobenzal-malononitrile)
CSS	combat service support
CTC	Combat Training Center
CTT	common task training
CTX	command training exercise
cus	customer perform its missions to ARTEP standards.
DA	Department of the Army
DD	Department of Defense (forms)
decon	decontamination
DEPEX	deployment exercise
dev	development
diagnostic feedback	Identifies by mission, task, and subtask specifically <u>what</u> the unit did or failed to accomplish and <u>why</u> . This feedback may be a written or a mental process. The recommendations to correct identified weaknesses must be provided if those weaknesses were not corrected during the training and evaluation exercise. Diagnostic feedback must be provided to the leader or commander responsible for the training and evaluation of the unit.
dislocated civilians	A new, generic term that replaces the subcategories of refugees, displaced persons, and evacuees.
drill book	Drill books are separate documents developed for squads and platoons or equivalent units. They provide a limited number of DA standard methods (battle drills or crew drills) for executing selected standard critical collective tasks.
DS	direct support
DS2	decontaminating solution 2
DTG	date-time group
EAC	echelons above corps

ECCI	electronic counter-countermeasures
EEFI	essential element of friendly information
EOD	explosive ordnance disposal
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
ERP	Enroute reporting points
eval	evaluation: That process which, by objective and subjective means, seeks to determine the extent of learning progress of teams or units. The purpose of evaluation is to determine if training objectives have been attained. It provides the training manager with the information he needs to modify or update his training program. In a formal evaluation this process provides the evaluator with the information he needs to judge the success or failure of a team or unit.
evaluation personnel	Those individuals selected to administer the formal evaluation phase of the Army Training and Evaluation Program and determine if the unit being evaluated meets the primary evaluation standards.
evaluation plan	A method or outline of a set of procedures that will be used to gather data and information for the purpose of assessing a course of instruction or other training product.
EW	electronic warfare
EXEVAL	external evaluation
external training and evaluation:	An exercise sponsored by a higher headquarters for the purpose of training and evaluating the ability of the subordinate unit(s) to achieve training objectives. The worth of this process is directly related to the quality of the trainer-evaluators and the assistance provided. Key to this effort is comprehensive diagnostic feedback and immediate follow-on training and evaluation to correct training weaknesses. They may vary in formality from a battalion or brigade commander furnishing comments on observations made from a visit during training or an external evaluation team with a detailed written scenario, providing feedback during a formal critique.
F/MLFX	fire/maneuver live fire exercise
FASCAM	family of scattered mines
FCX	fire coordination exercise
FDC	fire detection/direction controller
FM	field manual; frequency modulated
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FTX	field training exercise: An exercise conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions in which the troops and armament of one side are actually present while those of the other side may be imaginary or partially or fully represented by a second force (OPFOR).
function	A named category, descriptive of a subject under which tasks are listed. In some MTPs, functions are used instead of missions.
G1	Assistant Chief of Staff, Personnel
G2	Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence
G3	Assistant Chief of Staff, Operations and Plans
G4	Assistant Chief of Staff, Logistics
G5	Assistant Chief of Staff, Civil Affairs

gnr	gunner
GS	general support
GSR	ground surveillance radar
HE	high explosive
HHC	headquarters and headquarters company
HHD	headquarters and headquarters detachment
HMMWV	high-mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle
HN	host nation
HQ	headquarters
hr	hour
HUMINT	human intelligence

and implied individual tasks, leader tasks, and collective tasks or missions to maximize integration of individual and collective training. The identification process shows the relationship between individual tasks and collective training tasks or missions. The process also illustrates the relationship between the individual tasks themselves. The material shows the existence of individual training dependencies and gives the trainer a diagnostic measure to determine weak areas for corrective training. By listing leader tasks, the material also assists the planning and conduct of multiechelon training. Finally, the training manager may select any special individual tasks supporting the skill development test of soldiers of the unit and emphasize those tasks by training for the appropriate ARTEP missions.

evaluated by the performing unit for the purpose of self-evaluation and correction of weaknesses. This provides the trainer-evaluator with a means to train and simultaneously evaluate the ability of the unit to perform its critical combat missions and tasks.

IAW	in accordance with
ID	identification
implied mission	A collection of tasks visualized as one, accepted by an individual or unit as a service to be performed or an activity to be carried out though not specified by their commander or supervisor. Implied missions are derived from an analysis of a specified mission.
individual task	A unit of work activity that constitutes a logical and necessary step in the performance of a job or duty. Descriptions of task statements should be detailed enough to provide minimal step-by-step directions and guidance that an individual in training could follow to complete the task successfully. A task is the smallest unit of behavior in a job that describes the performance of a meaningful function in the job under consideration.
individual/collective integration:	The concept of identifying the specified
inf	infantry
INT	intelligence
Intell	intelligence
internal training and evaluation:	An exercise sponsored, controlled, and
INTSUM	intelligence summary
IR	information requirement
JTX	joint training exercise

kg	kilogram
KIA	killed in action
km	kilometer
LACE	liquid, ammunition, communications equipment
lb	pound
LBE	load bearing equipment
LC	line of contact
LCX	logistic coordination exercise
LD	line of departure
ldr	leader
leader task	A task performed by a leader and necessary to initiate or control a collective task. Leader tasks generally involve planning, supervising, inspecting, reporting, managing, and similar actions.
LFX	live fire exercise
LOMAH	location of miss and hit
LP	listening post
LT	lieutenant
LZ/DZ	landing zone/drop zone
m	meter
M&S	mobility and survivability
MACS	multipurpose arcade combat simulator
maint	maintenance
MAN	maneuver
MAPEX	map exercise
METL	mission essential task list
METT-T	mission, enemy, terrain, troops and time available
MG	machine gun
MI	Military Intelligence
MILES	multiple integrated laser engagement system: A family of eye-safe lasers and laser detectors designed to simulate direct fire weapons of various types. Instead of firing a projectile, the weapons shoot a blank that activates a laser and sends a pulse of energy, coded for the type of weapon, downrange. Receiving detectors, located on opposing troops and vehicles, pick up the laser pulses and instantly provide audiovisual indications of a hit, kill, or near miss.
mission outlines	Mission outlines are graphic portrayals of the relationships between critical wartime missions and the subordinate tasks inherent to those missions. Mission outlines are designed to provide the commander with a visual outline of the unit's critical wartime missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training at his level.
mission	Major TOE activities performed by recognized TOE echelons. Missions may be assigned or implied by the TOE or a major command to support local contingencies. Stated missions are those missions stated in a unit's TOE or in related mission documents. Implied missions are those missions not found in a unit's TOE or in related documents, but which analysts determine are required to be performed.
MOPP	mission-oriented protective posture
MOS	military occupational specialty
MOUT	military operations on urban terrain

MP	military police
MPFQC	Military Police Firearms Qualification Course
MPMG	MP machinegun
MPRC	multipurpose range complex
MSR	main supply route
MTF	Medical Treatment Facility
MTP	mission training plan
multiechelon training and evaluation:	A technique wherein training is simultaneously accomplished at more than one echelon, such as conducting staff training at battalion level, leader training at platoon and company level, and drill training at squad, crew, or section level. Multiechelon training and evaluation is an inherent design characteristic of MTP.
MWD	military working dogs
NA	not applicable
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NBC	nuclear, biological, chemical
NBCC	nuclear, biological, chemical center
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge
NCOPD	noncommissioned officer professional development
NCS	net control station
NLT	not later than
NSN	national stock number
OC	observer-controller
OCOKA	observation and fields of fire, concealment and cover, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach
OEG	operational exposure guidance
OES	officer education system
OIC	officer in charge
OP	observation post
OPD	officer professional development
OPFOR	opposing force: An organized force created from US Army units to portray the doctrine, tactics, and configuration of a potential adversary armed force during US Armed Forces training. (See AR 350-2 and FM 34-71.)
OPLAN	operations plan
OPORD	operation order
OPSEC	operation security
OPTEMPO	operating tempo
ORP	objective rally point
	accomplished through individual or team/unit performance of one or more tasks under specified conditions until the individual or team/unit can demonstrate the level of proficiency established by the training standard. The basis for conducting performance-oriented training is a training objective.
P	practice
PA	Pennsylvania
pam	pamphlet



PDDE	power-driven decontamination equipment
performance-oriented training:	A training strategy in which learning is
phys	physical
PIR	priority intelligence requirement
plt	platoon
PMCS	preventive maintenance check and services
POL	petroleum, oils and lubricants
PSYOP	psychological operations
PT	physical training
QC	quality control
QRF	quick reaction force
qual	qualification
R&S	reconnaissance and surveillance
RATELO	radio telephone operator
RC	Reserve Component
rds	rounds
readiness	The ability of a military unit to perform its wartime mission.
Recon	reconnaissance
rg	range
ROE	rules of engagement
ROI	rules of interaction
RP	release point
RSTA	reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition
RX	repairable exchange
S1	Adjutant
S2	Intelligence Officer
S3	Operations and Training Officer
S4	Supply Officer
S5	Civil Affairs Officer
SALUTE	size, activity, location, unit, time, equipment
SAW	squad automatic weapon
schd	schedule
SCPE	simplified collective protective equipment
SDSSTD	shoot/don't shoot stress training device
sec	section
SGT	sergeant
SINGARS	single-channel ground and airborne radio subsystem
SITREP	situation report
SL	skill level
SM	soldier's manual
SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks
SOI	signal operation instruction
SOP	standing operating procedure
SP	start point
sqd	squad
SRT	Special Reaction Team
SSI	signal supplemental instructions
STAFFEX	staff exercise
STANAG	Standardization Agreement
STB	super tropical bleach

std	standard: A description of the minimum degree of training proficiency that a specific type of unit must achieve to accomplish its mission or that a soldier must achieve to support the mission and survive on the battlefield.
STP	soldier training publication: These are task-specific publications that support individual training and evaluation of critical tasks. This group of publications consists of soldier's manuals, trainer's guides, job books, and military qualification standards manuals.
STRAC	Standards in Training Commission
STRESS	search, tag, evacuate, segregate, and safeguard
STRIKEWARN	friendly strike warning
STX	situational training exercise: A collective training exercise that is composed of drills, leader tasks, and separate individual tasks. STXs are more complex than drills, but are like drills because they train a specific task or group of tasks and represent a "chunk of battle" with a definite starting and stopping point. An STX may be a sequential execution of several drills, but a drill will never be made up of several STXs. Unlike drills, STXs are not prescriptive; that is, they do not show the only way to execute a task, but merely a doctrinally correct way.
subtasks	Constituent actions or units of work in normal sequential order that are required to fully perform the collective task. Subtasks will identify leader tasks and functions performed by some or all of the unit members. Subtasks are used, to group and sequence standards in a logical manner. Subtasks may be individual or collective. They each identify the leader, individuals, unit, or element responsible for performing the subtask.
supportive relationships	Skills and knowledge in one objective that have some relationship to those in another objective; the learning involved in mastery of one learning objective transfers to another, making learning involved in the mastery of the other easier.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Task--A statement that describes exactly what is to be done.</li> <li>b. Conditions--The situation or environment in which a task should be performed.</li> <li>c. Standard--The minimum acceptable performance required (quantifiable when possible) for successful accomplishment of the task.</li> </ul>
T	trained
t	trainer use
T&EO	training and evaluation outline: T&EOs contain the task, conditions, and standards for each collective task. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP. They provide measurable objective performance standards that form the basis for training, internal evaluations, and formal external evaluations.
TADSS	training aids, devices, simulators and simulations
tailoring	The process of modifying MTPs, FTXs, and STXs by the trainer-evaluator to train a unit based on its unique needs or limitations. Tailoring of an MTP is accomplished by developing overall training objectives through the BLTM process, and using these training objectives to produce scenarios of specific STXs, battle drills, and leader and individual tasks to be trained in order to accomplish the

	overall training objectives. FTXs and STXs are modified to fit the scenarios, but battle drills and individual tasks are not modified. In the case of units with severe resource constraints, tailoring will also include limiting the echelon to be trained to proficiency, as well as number and type of missions to be trained.
TC	training circular
TCF	tactical combat force
TCP	traffic control post
TEWT	tactical exercise without troops
TG	trainer's guide
tng	training
TOC	tactical operations center
TOCEX	tactical operations center exercise
TOE	table of organization and equipment
TP	target practice
trac	tracer
TRADOC	Training and Doctrine Command
Trainer	A person whose duties include the requirement to prepare, conduct, and evaluate a period of instruction or training. For example: (1) An MP squad leader who is required to prepare, conduct, and evaluate weapons maintenance training for squad members. (2) An MP platoon leader who is required to prepare, conduct, and evaluate land navigation training for noncommissioned officers.
trainer-evaluator	A dual integrated role of any person who uses the MTP for training and evaluation.
training equipment	Items of equipment such as rifles, vehicles, aircraft, motion picture projectors, engines, and test equipment, or their components. Although used for training, they do not lose their identity as end items and therefore are not training devices.
training manager	A person who is responsible for planning, organizing, conducting, and evaluating training, including the development of training programs. Training managers include any commander who develops a training program or who provides guidance to a commander who does. Under present Army policies (AR 350-1), battalion and separate company commanders are the principal training managers. However, company commanders or the operations/training officers of commands developing training programs are also training managers.
training matrix	This matrix relates the training products (STXs and battle drills) to the MTPs and their associated FTXs on the one hand, and to the individual and leader tasks on the other hand. The training matrix shows training relationships, not necessarily training or performance sequences.
training objective	A three-part statement that describes training and evaluation as follows:
training	Those formal activities designed to prepare individuals and teams or units for job/duty performance.
TRC	training readiness condition
TRL	trailer
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
U	untrained

u	unit use
unit evaluation	A measurement of a unit's proficiency against an established standard at a specific moment of time. Evaluations are run in strict accordance with the evaluation scenario, regardless of the unit's success or failure in accomplishing specific tasks. Evaluations are designed to be administered by the headquarters two echelons above the evaluated unit and are a tool for the appropriate chain of command echelon to determine proficiency in specific missions or tasks.
US	United States
USACIDC	United States Army Criminal Investigation Command
USAR	United States Army Reserve
USAREUR	United States Army Europe
VHS	vertical helical standard
VIP	very important person
w/c1	with change 1
WESTCOM	Western Command
WIA	wounded in action
wpnr	weaponeer
wpons	weapons

## REFERENCES

### SOURCES USED

These are the sources quoted or paraphrased in this publication.

#### Army Regulation (AR):

25-30 The Army Integrated Publishing and Printing Program. 28 February 1989.  
Change 1, 2 August 1993. Supplement 1, 15 February 1994.

#### Field Manuals (FMs):

25-100 Training the Force. 15 November 1988.

25-101 Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990.

#### TRADOC Regulations (TRegs):

25-30 Preparation, Production, and Processing of Armywide Doctrinal and Training Literature. 30 March 1990.

25-31 TRADOC Armywide Doctrinal and Training Literature Program.  
30 March 1990.

350-70 Training Development Management, Processes, and Products.  
24 September 1995.

#### TRADOC Pamphlet (TPam):

350-70-1 Guide for Producing Collective Training Products. 15 March 1996.

## DOCUMENTS NEEDED

These documents must be available to the intended users of this publication.

#### Army Regulations (ARs):

5-13 Training Ammunition Management system, 20 December 1994.

27-10 Military Justice. 24 June 1996.

190-8 Enemy Prisoners of War--Administration, Employment and Compensation. 1 June 1982.

190-11 Physical Security of Arms, Ammunition and Explosives. 30 September 1993.

190-13 The Army Physical Security Program. 30 September 1993.

190-57 Civilian Internees - Administration, Employment and Compensation. 4 March 1987.

200-1 Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997.

350-2 Opposing Force Program. 15 June 1983.

350-41 Training in Units. 19 March 1993.

380-5 Department of the Army Information Security Program. 25 March 1988.

385-10 Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988.

385-40 Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994.

385-63 Policies and Procedures for Firing Ammunition for Training, Target Practice and Combat. 15 October 1983.

530-1 Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995.

600-8-1 Army Casualty and Memorial Affairs and Line of Duty Investigations. 20 October 1994.

600-8-6 Personnel Accounting and Strength Reporting. 20 May 1994.

600-8-101 Personnel Processing and Mobilization Processing. 12 December 1989.

750-1 Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994.

**Department of the Army Forms (DA Forms):**

1156 Casualty Feeder Report. June 1966.

1248 Raod Reconnaissance Report. July 1960.

1594 Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. November 1962.

2028 Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. February 1974.

2665-R Capture Card for Prisoner of War. May 1982.

3161 Request for Issue or Turn-In. May 1983.

5367-R Personnel Status Report. December 1984.

**Department of the Army Pamphlets (DA Pams):**

25-30 Consolidated Index of Army Publications and Blank Forms. 1 Oct 1997.

350-9 Index and Description of Army Training Devices. 9 December 1988.

385-1 Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide. 22 September 1993.

710-2-1 Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 1 June 1982.

738-750 Functional User Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994.

750-1 Leader's Unit Level Maintenance Handbook. 15 February 1994.

**Department of Defense Regulations and Manuals:**

- 4500.32-R Military Standard Transportation and Movement Procedures (Vol. 1). 15 March 1987.
- 5100.76-M Physical Security of Sensitive Conventional Arms, Ammunition, and Explosives. 3 February 1983.

**Field Manuals (FMs):**

- 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.
- 3-4 NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.
- 3-5 NBC Decontamination. 17 November 1993.
- 3-19 NBC Reconnaissance. 19 February 1993.
- 3-50 Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990.
- 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification. 10 May 1985.
- 7-7 The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad. 15 March 1985.
- 7-8 The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992.
- 7-10 The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.
- 8-10 Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations. 1 March 1991.
- 8-10-6 Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 31 October 1991.
- 8-10-7 Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment. 22 April 1993.
- 8-55 Planning for Health Service Support. 4 September 1994.
- 8-230 Medical Specialist. 24 August 1984.
- 8-285 Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995.
- 12-6 Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994.
- 17-95 Calvary Operations. 24 December 1996.
- 19-1 Military Police Support for the Airland Battle. 23 May 1988.
- 19-4 Military Police Battlefield Circulation Control, Area Security, and Enemy Prisoner of War Operations. 7 May 1993.
- 19-10 Military Police Law and Order Operations. 30 September 1987.
- 19-15 Civil Disturbances. 25 November 1985.
- 19-20 Law Enforcement Investigations. 25 November 1985.
- 19-25 Military Police Traffic Operations. 30 September 1977.

19-30 Physical Security. 1 March 1979.

19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees, and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.

19-60 Confinement and Correctional Treatment of US Military Prisoners. 27 May 1986.

21-3 Camouflage. 14 November 1990.

21-11 First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988.

25-100 Training the Force. 15 November 1988.

25-101 Battle-Focused Training. 30 September 1990.

27-10 The Law of Land Warfare. 19 July 1956.

41-10 Civil Affairs Operations. 11 January 1993.

44-8 Small Unit Self-Defense Against Air Attack. 30 December 1981.

57-38 Pathfinder Operations. 9 April 1993.

90-13 River Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998.

90-40 Multiservice Procedures for the Tactical Employment of Nonlethal Weapons. 6 October 1998.

100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993.

100-15 Corps Operations. 29 October 1996.

100-20 Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict. 5 December 1990.

101-5 Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.

100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993.

101-5-1 Operational Terms and Symbols. 30 September 1997.

**Soldier Training Publications (STPs):**

19-95B1-SM Soldier's Manual, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Level 1. 21 February 1997.

19-95B24-SM-TG Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Levels 2/3/4. 21 February 1997.

21-1-SMCT Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994.

**Training Circulars (TCs):**

11-4 Handbook for AN/VRC-12 Series of Radio Sets. 8 April 1977.

11-6 Grounding Techniques. 3 March 1989.



- 25-1 Training Land. 30 September 1991.
- 25-6 Tactical Engagement Simulation Training with MILES. 3 October 1995.

### **READINGS RECOMMENDED**

These readings contain relevant supplemental information.

#### **TRADOC Pamphlet:**

TRADOC Pam 350-9 TRADOC Training Devices for Armywide Use (Available from:  
Commander, HQ TRADOC, ATTN: AG Publications Stockroom,  
Ft Monroe, VA 22304)

#### **Standardization Agreements (STANAGs):**

(Refer to Department of Defense Index Specifications and Standards)

- 2033 Interrogation of Prisoners of War (PW). 29 August 1986.
- 2084 Handling and Reporting of Captured Enemy Equipment and Documents.  
26 June 1986.
- 2103 Reporting Nuclear Detonations, Biological and Chemical Attacks, and  
Predicting and Warning of Associated Hazards and Hazard Areas. 31 March 1988.
- 2154 Regulations for Military Motor Vehicle Movement by Road. 19 October 1987.

NOTE: STANAGs are available from: Naval Publications and Forms Center, 5801 Tabor Avenue,  
Philadelphia, PA 19120. (DD Form 1425 may be used to requisition documents.)

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
USER FEEDBACK**

MTP NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. A standard questionnaire has been provided to make it easier for you to make your recommendations,. Please answer all questions frankly and mail to: US Army Military Police School, ATTN: ATZN-MP-D, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65437-5000.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position? \_\_\_\_\_
2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_
3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_
4. What is your component? A. AC B. USAR C. NG
5. Where is your unit? A. CONUS B. USAREUR C. WESTCOM  
D. Eighth US Army E. Other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES.

6. What STX would you recommend be added or deleted from the MTP?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. What FTX would you recommend be added or deleted from the MTP?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercise?
  - A. Needs more information on how to set up the exercise.
  - B. Needs more information on leader training.
  - C. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercise.
  - D. Needs more information on support and resources.

9. How many STXs or FTXs have you trained or participated in personally?

---

---

10. How often does your unit train on nonmilitary police tasks during the exercise?

---

---

---

---

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTER 5.

11. What changes would you make to the T&EOs in this chapter?

---

---

---

12. What T&EOs would you add ?

---

---

---

13. What T&EOs would you delete?

---

---

---

14 . Additional comments:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

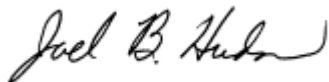
---

ARTEP 19-313-10-MTP  
10 APRIL 1999

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

Official:

DENNIS J. REIMER  
*General, United States Army*  
*Chief of Staff*



JOEL B. HUDSON  
*Administrative Assistant to the*  
*Secretary of the Army*  
05781

**DISTRIBUTION:**

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and U.S. Army Reserve:* To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number 121628, requirements for ARTEP 19-313-10-MTP.

